Role of seminal fluid in sexual transmission of HIV-1

Thesis

How to cite:

For guidance on citations see FAQs.

© 2001 Louise U. Kim

Version: Version of Record

Link(s) to article on publisher’s website:
http://dx.doi.org/doi:10.21954/ou.ro.0000fcfe

Copyright and Moral Rights for the articles on this site are retained by the individual authors and/or other copyright owners. For more information on Open Research Online’s data policy on reuse of materials please consult the policies page.

oro.open.ac.uk
ROLE OF SEMINAL FLUID IN
SEXUAL TRANSMISSION OF HIV-1

LOUISE U. KIM, BSC, MSc

JUNE, 2001

THIS THESIS IS SUBMITTED AS PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS OF
THE OPEN UNIVERSITY FOR THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Institute of Molecular Medicine, Oxford, in collaboration with
Department of Immunology, Chelsea and Westminster Hospital, London

SUBMISSION DATE: 15 JUNE 2001
AWARD DATE: 30 OCTOBER 2001
## INDEX

Abstract 6  
Acknowledgements 8  
Abbreviations 9  
List of Tables 13  
List of Figures 14  
Presentations and Publications arising from this thesis 18

### Chapter 1: Introduction

1.1. Introduction to the thesis 20  
1.2. Epidemiology of HIV 21  
1.3. HIV structure and Replication 23  
  1.3.1. The structure of HIV 23  
  1.3.2. The viral life cycle 24  
1.4. Cellular Tropism of HIV-1 29  
  1.4.1. Chemokine receptor usage by HIV-1 and their natural ligands 30  
  1.4.2. Mutations in the chemokine receptor genes and the effect on HIV-1 entry into CD4+ cells and disease progression 34  
1.5. Transmission of HIV 37  
  1.5.1. Vertical transmission 37  
  1.5.2. Transmission via contact with HIV-infected blood 39  
  1.5.3. Sexual transmission 40  
1.6. The biology of Dendritic cells 45  
  1.6.1. Dendritic cells and their potential role in HIV-1 transmission 53
I.7. Semen

I.7.1. Composition of seminal fluid
I.7.2. Immunological functions of seminal plasma
I.7.3. HIV-1 in semen
I.7.4. 'Sperm-washing'

I.7. Aim of thesis

Chapter 2: Materials and Methods

II.1. Subjects

II.2 Sample preparation and cell cultures

II.2.1. Peripheral blood mononuclear cell separation
II.2.2. Semen separation
II.2.3. Freezing and thawing cells
II.2.4. Separation of CD14+ cells using MicroBeads
II.2.5. Generation of dendritic cells from CD14+ monocytes
II.2.6. Pulsing of dendritic cells with seminal plasma, PGE2, or 19-OH PGE2 and/or TNF-α
II.2.7. Allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reaction
II.2.8. Recovery of allogeneic T cell proliferation

II.3. Flow cytometry

II.3.1. Surface marker staining
II.3.2. Intracellular cytokine staining

II.4. Nucleic acid extraction

II.4.1. Tri Reagent

II.4.1.1. RNA isolation
II.4.1.2. DNA isolation 79
II.4.2. RNAzol B 80
II.4.3. NucliSens Lysis Buffer 81
II.4.4. Spectrophotometer 82

II.5. Molecular analysis of the cells
II.5.1. Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction for CD4 83
II.5.2. Polymerase chain reaction for viral (HIV-1) DNA detection 83
II.5.3. Quantitation of HIV-1 RNA load using NucliSens
   II.5.3.1. Amplification 86
   II.5.3.2. Detection 86
II.5.4. Gel electrophoresis 87

II.6. In vitro-infection of dendritic cells with HIV-1
II.6.1. Propagation of virus 88
II.6.2. p24 Enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) 89
II.6.3. In vitro-infection of dendritic cells with HIV-1 91

II.7. Statistical analysis 91

II.8. Reagents and suppliers 93

Chapter 3: Evaluation of sperm-washing as a potential method of reducing
HIV transmission in HIV-discordant couples wishing to have
children
III.1. Introduction 97

III.2. Results
   III.2.1. HIV-1 RNA load in seminal fractions and blood plasma 99
   III.2.2. Proviral DNA detection in seminal cells
III.2.3. Expression of CD4 and HIV-1 co-receptors on seminal cells

III.2.4. Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction for CD4

III.2.5. Establishing a clinical service of ‘sperm-washing’ for HIV-discordant couples

III.3. Discussion

Chapter 4: Immunomodulatory effect of seminal plasma on dendritic cells

IV.1. Introduction

IV.2. Results

  IV.2.1. TNF-α and seminal plasma titration

  IV.2.2. Phenotypic characterisation of CD14+ monocyte-derived dendritic cells treated with seminal plasma and/or TNF-α

  IV.2.3. Allostimulatory ability of CD14+ monocyte-derived dendritic cells exposed to seminal plasma and/or TNF-α

  IV.2.4. Identification of seminal components responsible for suppression of allostimulatory ability of CD14+ monocyte-derived dendritic cells

IV.3. Discussion

Chapter 5: Effect of seminal plasma on expression of HIV-1 co-receptors and infection with HIV-1

V.1. Introduction

V.2. Results

  V.2.1. Surface expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on CD14+ monocyte-
Chapter 6: Discussion

VI.1. Summary of thesis

VI.2. Significance of in vitro finding to the in vivo situation

VI.2.1. The effect of seminal plasma and TNF-a on DC function in the Female reproductive tract

VI.2.2. The relationship between DCs in the female reproductive tract and HIV-1

VI.3. The role of mucosal epithelial DCs in sexual transmission of HIV-1

Bibliography
This study analysed the reservoir of HIV-1 in semen and the effects of seminal plasma on the functional and phenotypic characteristics of dendritic cells (DCs), both in relation to immunoregulatory capabilities and susceptibility to infection with HIV. The reservoir of HIV-1 in semen was defined in order to assess the feasibility of 'sperm washing' as a means of reducing the risk of transmission in HIV-1-discordant couples.

The fact that neither viral RNA or DNA could be detected in spermatozoa and the lack of expression of CD4 both at the protein and mRNA levels suggests that spermatozoa are not susceptible to HIV-1 infection. Viral RNA was detected in seminal plasma and both RNA and DNA were detected in non-sperm cells. As a result of this study, sperm washing is a service that is now available at the Chelsea & Westminster Hospital to HIV-1-discordant couples. This service has resulted in several births and no seroconversions in any woman who has undergone the procedure.

The effects of seminal plasma on the phenotype and function of monocyte-derived DCs were investigated. Seminal plasma had suppressive effects on the allostimulatory capacity of DCs and such effects appeared to be due to down-regulation of co-stimulatory molecule expression on these cells. The suppressive effect of seminal plasma was abrogated by the removal of lipids. However, prostaglandins on their own did not have suppressive effects on DC function, suggesting that other seminal components are required to induce the
observed induction of suppression. The suppressive effect of seminal plasma on the allostimulatory function of DCs was overcome with TNF-α, as did the presence of HIV. The expression of HIV co-receptors was assessed on DCs. TNF-α induced maturation of DCs as demonstrated by reduced expression of CCR5 and increased CXCR4. Seminal plasma also enhanced expression of CXCR4 and infection with X4 strains of HIV, but down-regulated CCR5 expression and infection with R5 strains of HIV. Therefore, the regulation of co-receptor expression by DCs was associated with their susceptibility to infection with a HIV strain displaying the corresponding co-receptor usage.

In summary, semen is an important vehicle for transmission of HIV. Seminal plasma was demonstrated to have profound effects on DC phenotype, maturation and function. Such alterations would influence the outcome, in terms of HIV transmission, of the interaction between the DC and HIV-1 at the mucosal surface.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This thesis is dedicated to my parents who provided me continued support and encouragement throughout my life.

I am indebted to Professor Frances Gotch without whose help this project would not have been possible. My special thanks go to Dr. Jill Gilmour for her close supervision. I am also grateful to many of my other colleagues who have provided excellent scientific advice especially Dr. Peter Hayes, Dr. John Wilkinson, Dr. Steve Patterson, and Dr. Nesrina Imami (also for sharing her wisdom with me). I would also like to acknowledge all the patients who participated in the study and Glenn Sontag for recruiting the patients. I must give a special mention to Jamie, Cath, Ruth, Ayako and Elizabeth who always had time for me. I must not forget to thank those who provided anonymous control samples. Last but not least, I am extremely grateful to my family for their continued support during this sometimes difficult time.

This work was supported by The St Stephen’s AIDS trust and partly by the Elton John AIDS Foundation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AIDS</td>
<td>Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Antigen presenting cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFA</td>
<td>Brefeldin A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAF</td>
<td>CD8⁺ T-lymphocyte anti-viral T cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPM</td>
<td>Counts per minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTL</td>
<td>Cytotoxic T lymphocyte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAF</td>
<td>Decay accelerating factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC</td>
<td>Dendritic cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>Dimethyl sulphoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBS</td>
<td>Earl’s balanced salt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV</td>
<td>Epstein-Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDTA</td>
<td>Ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGF</td>
<td>Epidermal growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELC</td>
<td>EBV-induced molecule ligand chemokine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>Enzyme linked immunosorbent assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FcR</td>
<td>Fc receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCS</td>
<td>Foetal calf serum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FITC</td>
<td>Fluorescein isothiocyanate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC</td>
<td>Follicular dendritic cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM-CSF</td>
<td>Granulocyte-monocyte-colony stimulating factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gp</td>
<td>glycoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>Human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA</td>
<td>Human leukocyte antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICAM</td>
<td>Intracellular adhesion molecule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFN</td>
<td>Interferon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ig</td>
<td>Immunoglobulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Interleukin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPC</td>
<td>IFN-α producing cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>In vitro-fertilisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>Ligand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAV</td>
<td>Lymphadenopathy-associated virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>Langerhans’ cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFA</td>
<td>Leukocyte function antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCP</td>
<td>Monocyte chemotactic protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDC</td>
<td>Macrophage-derived chemokine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDDC</td>
<td>CD14⁺ monocyte-derived dendritic cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFI</td>
<td>Mean fluorescence intensity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHC</td>
<td>Major histocompatibility complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIP</td>
<td>Macrophage inflammatory protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLR</td>
<td>Mixed lymphocyte reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMI</td>
<td>Medicol medium isotonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M-tropic</td>
<td>Macrophage-tropic HIV strain (i.e. HIV strain preferentially infecting macrophages)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSC</td>
<td>Non-sperm cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSI</td>
<td>Non-syncytium-inducing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OD</td>
<td>Optical density</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBMC</td>
<td>Peripheral blood mononuclear cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS</td>
<td>Phosphate buffered saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCP</td>
<td><em>Pneumocystis carinii</em> pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>Phycoerythrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGE</td>
<td>Prostaglandin E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHA</td>
<td>Phytohaemagglutinin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMA</td>
<td>Phorbol 12-Myristate 13-Acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMN</td>
<td>Polymorphonuclear leukocytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q-red</td>
<td>Quantum red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R5</td>
<td>CCR5-utilising HIV strain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANTES</td>
<td>Regulated upon activation of normal T cell-expressed and secreted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPE-Cy5</td>
<td>Phycoerythrin cychrome 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Reverse transcriptase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT-PCR</td>
<td>Reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Standard deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDF</td>
<td>Stroma cell-derived factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>Standard error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI</td>
<td>Syncytium-inducing or stimulation index (indices)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIV</td>
<td>Simian immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLC</td>
<td>Secondary lymphoid tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPM</td>
<td>Seminal plasma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STD</td>
<td>Sexually transmitted disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAP</td>
<td>Transport associated protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGF</td>
<td>Transforming growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF</td>
<td>Tumour necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tRNA</td>
<td>Transfer ribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-tropic</td>
<td>T cell-tropic HIV strain (i.e. HIV strain preferentially infecting T-lymphocytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X4</td>
<td>CXCR4-utilising HIV strain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF TABLES

Chapter 1
Table I.1. The proteins encoded by HIV-1 and HIV-2
Table I.2. Chemokine receptors and their natural ligands
Table I.3. Substances found in seminal fluid

Chapter 2
Table II.1. Antibodies used for flow cytometric analysis
Table II.2. Primers
Table II.3. Viral isolates used to infect DCs

Chapter 3
Table II.1. Viral load in semen and blood
Table III.2. Summary of phenotypic analyses of seminal cells from HIV-1 negative individuals
Table III.3. Investigations required prior to intra-uterine insemination (IUI)
Table III.4. Normal semen parameters outlined by WHO

Chapter 5
Table V.1. p24 protein produced by MDDCs infected with HIV-1 in vitro
Table V.2. p24 protein produced by allogeneic MLRs using MDDCs infected with HIV-1 in vitro
Table V.3. p24 protein produced by allogeneic MLR using MDDCs exposed to HIV-1$^+$ seminal plasma
LIST OF FIGURES

Chapter 1

Fig.1.1. Genomic organisation of HTV (a) and the virion structure (b)
Fig.1.2. HIV-1 long terminal repeat DNA with potential binding sites for DNA and RNA proteins
Fig.1.3. Regulation of HIV gene expression
Fig.1.4. The female genital tract
Fig.1.5. Examples of adhesion molecules involved in DC and T cell interaction
Fig.1.6. Developmental pathway of DCs
Fig.1.7. The male reproductive system: section through the male pelvis (a) and testis (b)

Chapter 2

Fig.II.1. Semen separation by differential gradient centrifugation over 80% and 40% Medicol Medium Isotonic (MMI)
Fig.II.2. Flow cytometric analysis showing the CD14⁺ monocyte population after CD14⁺ cell separation using MicroBeads and CD1α⁺ immature DC population after 5 days of culture in the presence of IL-4 and GM-CSF
Fig.II.3. Virus propagation: measurement of p24 protein production by ELISA

Chapter 3

Fig.III.1. Diagram showing semen preparation and analyses of each seminal component
Fig.III.2. Nested PCR showing sensitivity of viral DNA detection
Fig. IV. 13. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with 19-OH PGE2

Fig. IV. 14. Possible mechanisms for altered allostimulatory capacity of DCs which are exposed to seminal plasma and DCs which are exposed to TNF-α and for TNF-α overcoming the suppressive effect of seminal plasma

Chapter 5

Fig. V. 1. Flow chart showing experiments performed in chapter 5

Fig. V. 2. Expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on HIV-negative seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs

Fig. V. 3. Viral DNA detection in MDDCs infected with HIV-1 in vitro

Fig. V. 4. Viral DNA assay by PCR

Fig. V. 5. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with virus with different cellular tropism

Fig. V. 6. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with JRCSF virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

Fig. V. 7. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with PE106 virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

Fig. V. 8. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with JW5 virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

Fig. V. 9. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with seminal plasma from HIV^+ patients
Chapter 6

Fig. VI.1. Proposed mechanisms for the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on DCs and for TNF-α-induced and/or virus-induced abrogation of the suppressive effect.
PRESENTATIONS AND PUBLICATION ARISING FROM THIS THESIS

This work was presented in part at:

   (Oral presentation by Kim LU)
   Evaluation of sperm washing as a potential method of reducing HIV transmission in HIV-discordant couples wishing to have children.

   (Oral presentation by Gilmour JW)
   Potential immunomodulatory effect of seminal plasma on dendritic cells.
   **Kim LU, Gotch FM, Gilmour JW**

   (Poster presentation by Kim LU)
   The effect of semen on the phenotype and function of cultured dendritic cells.
   **Kim LU, Gotch FM, Gilmour JW**
Publication arising from this thesis:

I

INTRODUCTION

I.1. INTRODUCTION TO THE THESIS

The acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) was first recognised as a new disease in 1981, with a report of *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia (PCP) (Masur *et al*, 1981; Gottlieb *et al*, 1981). In 1983, a retrovirus was isolated from the lymph node lymphocytes of a French homosexual patient with generalised hyperplastic lymphadenopathy and hence the virus was termed lymphadenopathy-associated virus (LAV) (Barre-Sinoussi *et al*, 1983; Montagnier *et al*, 1984). The following year, Gallo’s group confirmed and extended this finding, linking this virus to the immunodeficiency syndrome and the virus was renamed human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (Sarngadharan *et al*, 1985). In 1986, a second related HIV, HIV-2, was isolated from West Africa (Franchini *et al*, 1987). It has now been shown that the first apparent HIV infection was in 1959 in Africa (Zhu *et al*, 1998). Despite the nucleotide sequence homology between HIV-1 and HIV-2 being only 42% and their antigenic cross reactivity is restricted, the clinical consequence of infection with either virus is similar (Evans and Levy, 1989).

HIV is transmitted vertically from mother to infant, by sexual contact and by contact with infected blood (i.e. blood transfusion and in intravenous drug users). This thesis focuses on HIV-1 transmission via a sexual contact. Aim of this thesis
is to define the HIV reservoir in semen and to elucidate the effect of seminal plasma on dendritic cell (DC) function and also on the uptake of HIV-1 by DCs.

I.2. Epidemiology of HIV

The human immunodeficiency virus is a member of the lentivirus ("slow virus") genus of the Retroviridae family. HIV is grouped into two types, HIV type 1 (HIV-1) and HIV type 2 (HIV-2), on the basis of serology and sequence analysis of molecularly cloned viral genomes. Phylogenetic studies have provided evidence that HIV-1 is closely related to a simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) that naturally infects the chimpanzee, Pan troglodytes troglodytes, (SIV prm) (Gao et al, 1999). HIV-2 is closely related to a SIV naturally infecting sooty mangabey monkeys, Cercocebus atys, (SIV mm) (Hirsch et al, 1989; Gao et al, 1994). It is believed that zoonotic transfer of these non-human primate immunodeficiency viruses resulted in the emergence of HIV-1 and HIV-2 (Joag et al, 1996). HIV-1 is distributed throughout the world, whereas HIV-2 remains largely restricted to West Africa [Cameroon, Ivory Coast, Senegal (Joag et al, 1996; Miyazaki, 1995)]. It has been suggested that HIV-2 is less likely to be transmitted sexually than HIV-1 (reviewed by Li et al, 1998) and this may a reason for the more restricted geographic distribution of HIV-2. Both HIV-1 and 2 isolates display large sequence variations in the env gene. A classification scheme, based on env gene sequences, describes 10 subtypes/clades of HIV-1 (A to J; Main (M) group) and 5 subtypes of HIV-2 (A to E) (WHO network for HIV isolation and characterisation, 1994; Gao et al, 1994). For HIV-1, an outlier (O) group is found in Cameroon,
Gabon and Equatorial Guinea and a new (N) group was identified in two people in Cameroon in 1998 (Simon et al, 1998; Weiss and Wrangham, 1999). There is a high degree of intra-subtype diversification. Although mutation appears to be the major factor responsible for viral variation, recombination also occurs in individuals infected with viruses from different clades. It has been demonstrated that clade A and D recombination occurs frequently in Uganda (Gao et al, 1994; personal communication from Dr. D. Yirrel, Edinburgh University, UK). Some areas of the world harbour predominantly a single subtype (eg. subtype B is predominant in North America and Europe, subtype C in India and South Africa and subtype E in Thailand), whereas two or more subtypes may be prevalent in other populations. Many subtypes are frequently found in Sub-Saharan Africa and subtype B and C viruses are predominant in Latin America and Caribbean countries (Quinn, 1996; Essex, 1998). In no country, however, is a single subtype exclusive.

According to the recent data released by United Nations AIDS program (UNAIDS) and World Health Organisation (WHO) in 2000, approximately 15000 persons per day become infected, with more than 95% of new infections occurring in developing countries. About 36.1 million people worldwide are presently living with HIV. More than 10% of new infections are occurring in children under age of 15 and nearly half of new infections are in women. UNAIDS further estimated 3 million deaths from AIDS worldwide in 2000 and a total since the epidemic began of 21.8 million deaths. Each day, nearly 1200 children die as a result of AIDS and

I.3. HIV STRUCTURE AND REPLICATION

1.3.1. The structure of HIV

The HIV-1 virion has a diameter of about 110nm with 72 external viral transmembrane glycoproteins expressed in a host cell derived lipid bilayer envelope along with host class I and II MHC antigens (Nermit et al, 1993). The viral glycoprotein gp41 inserts into the lipid bilayer membrane and, with gp120, protrudes through to form the outer surface of the virus particle. The nucleoprotein core of the virion comprises two copies of the viral genomic RNA associated with tRNA molecules along with mature gag and pol protein products (fig.I.1a and b; Field et al, 1996; Karn, 1995). The 9 kb RNA genome of HIV encodes for at least nine proteins (table I.1) which can be divided into three groups:

i) The major structural proteins gag, pol, and env.

ii) The regulatory proteins tat, nef and rev.

iii) The accessory proteins vpr, vif and vpu for HIV-1 or vpx for HIV-2.

The function of each protein is listed in table I.1.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Protein</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virion Proteins</td>
<td>gag</td>
<td><strong>MA</strong> <em>(p17; Matrix protein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Membrane binding, nuclear localisation signal for the viral pre-integration complex, virus assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>CA</strong> <em>(p24; Capsid protein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Virus assembly, interaction with Cyclophilin A required for viral infectivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>NC</strong> <em>(p9; Nucleocapsid protein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>RNA binding, virus assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>pol</strong></td>
<td><strong>PR</strong> <em>(p11; Protease)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cleavage of viral polyproteins, virus maturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>RT</strong> <em>(p66/p51; Reverse transcriptase/ RNase H)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Virus replication (RNA-dependent polymerase and hydrolysis of RNA from RNA:DNA hybrids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>IN</strong> <em>(p32; Integrase)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Virus replication (insertion of linear ds viral DNA into the host cell chromosome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>env</strong></td>
<td><strong>SS</strong> <em>(gp120; Envelope protein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CD4 and second co-receptor binding, viral infectivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>TM</strong> <em>(gp41; Transmembrane envelope glycoprotein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contains fusion domain at N-terminus: fusion of viral membrane with the plasma membrane during virus entry, anchor the protein in the lipid bilayer of the viral envelope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory Proteins</td>
<td>vpr</td>
<td><strong>Vpr</strong> <em>(Viral protein R)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Translocation of pre-integration complex to nucleus (nuclear localisation signal), arrest cellular proliferation resulting in reduced lysis of HIV-1 infected cells by CTLs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vif</td>
<td><strong>Vif</strong> <em>(Viral infectivity factor)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitating viral internalisation or uncoating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpx</td>
<td><strong>Vpx</strong> <em>(Viral protein X)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Viral structural protein found in HIV-2 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpu</td>
<td><strong>Vpu</strong> <em>(Viral Protein U)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Down-regulation of CD4 expression, envelope maturation and virus release, found in HIV-1 only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulatory proteins</td>
<td>tat</td>
<td><strong>Tat</strong> <em>(Trans-activator protein)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stimulates transcriptional elongation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rev</td>
<td><strong>Rev</strong> <em>(Regulator of viral expression)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Regulator of late gene expression, stimulates appearance of unspliced mRNA in cytoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nef</td>
<td><strong>Nef</strong> <em>(Negative factor)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Down regulates CD4, regulate T cell signalling pathway</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.3.2. The viral life cycle

The replication cycle is divided into an early and a late phase: each phase consists of sequential steps which involve specific interactions of viral proteins and nucleic acids with host factors. The early phase starts with the attachment to and entry of a virion into a cell, reverse transcription of the viral RNA genome into a double-stranded (ds) DNA copy catalysed by viral reverse transcriptase, and transport of the DNA copy to the nucleus followed by integration into the host cell genome at a random site in the chromosome. The late phase involves transcription and processing of viral RNA from the integrated proviral DNA template and translation of viral proteins followed by release of progeny virions from the cell.

i) Attachment and entry of the virion to a host cell

The envelope glycoprotein gp120 binds to the CDR2-like region of the CD4 receptor D1 domain with an affinity constant on the order of 1nM (Karn, 1995; Dragic et al., 1992) and also binds to a second receptor (e.g. CCR5 or CXCR4; refer to 1.4 for detail). It is hypothesised that this binding induces conformational changes in the envelope protein which unmask the gp41 fusogenic domain, leading to fusion of viral and cell membranes (Callebaut et al., 1993; Benjouad et al., 1997). Fusion results in release of the core into the cell cytoplasm, followed by removal of outer core proteins, exposing the viral nucleoprotein complex.
ii) **Reverse transcription and integration**

After entry of the core into the cytoplasm of a susceptible cell, viral RNA is reverse transcribed into a double-stranded (ds) DNA copy by viral reverse transcriptase (RT). HIV-1 particles contain two homologous genomic RNAs and tRNA\(^{\text{Lys}}\) (Fig.1.1), which are used as primers for RNA-dependent DNA synthesis (Jiang et al., 1993; Ratner et al., 1985). The 18 3’-terminal nucleotides of tRNA\(^{\text{Lys}}\), which form the anti-codon loop, are complementary to a primer-binding site within the viral RNA (Isel et al., 1993; Skripkin et al., 1996). This template-primer complex binds to viral RT. RT is a heterodimer consisting of p55 and p61 subunits and this heterodimeric form of RT is the result of carboxyl-terminal proteolytic cleavage of one subunit of the homodimer (p66/p66) (Chandra et al., 1986). HIV-1 RT is a multifunctional enzyme with three enzymatic activities: RNA-dependent DNA polymerase (RT), DNA-dependent DNA polymerase and RNase H. Both polymerase activities catalyse template-directed phosphodiester bond formation in the 5’ to 3’ direction. The nucleoprotein complex containing the matrix protein and integrase is translocated to the nucleus. The transport signals for this appear to be encoded by the p17 matrix protein (Von Schwedler et al., 1994). It has also been shown that an intact vpr gene is required for nuclear entry of viral DNA (Heinzinger et al., 1994). The integration is mediated by the viral integrase which is responsible for DNA cleavage and strand exchange.

The type, activation and differentiation stage of the CD4\(^+\) cell which has undergone fusion with a HIV virion influences the subsequent reverse
Fig. 1.1. Genomic organisation of HIV (a) and the virion structure (b) (Fields et al, 1996; Karn 1995)*

(a)

NC = Nucleocapsid Protein  RT = Reverse Transcriptase
MA = Matrix Protein  IN = Integrase
CA = Major Capsid Protein  SS = Surface Subunit
PR = Protease  TM = Transmembrane Subunit

(b)

Viral Genome
transcription and integration events. In terminally differentiated cells such as macrophages, reverse transcription results in complete proviral DNA copies that integrate into the host DNA (Wienberg et al., 1991; Lewis et al., 1992). Viral gene expression and virion production may then follow integration in such cells. In T cells however, complete reverse transcription followed by integration and viral gene expression requires proliferation of the host cell (Zack et al., 1990). In non-proliferating T cells, HIV-1 may enter the cell with initiation of reverse transcription. Zack et al. suggest that reverse transcription is incomplete and the resulting DNA is labile with an in vitro half-life of approximately 1 day. Others claim such extrachromosomal viral DNA may persist for weeks, with complete reverse transcription, integration and viral gene expression following subsequent activation of the cell (Stevenson et al., 1990).

iii) Expression of viral gene

Transcription of viral DNA and viral gene expression is controlled by both cellular and viral factors (Fig.1.2). The integrated provirus carries duplicate structures, called the long terminal repeats (LTR) at both 3'- and 5'-ends of the viral genome. The 5' LTR contains promoters for transcription and the 3' LTR provides a polyadenylation signal (Gaynor, 1992). As described above, viral gene expression in T cells requires proliferation of the host cell. Transcription of proviral DNA is greatly enhanced by host cell immune activation, cytokines [e.g. IL-1 (Kobayashi et al., 1989), IL-6 and TNF-α (Okamoto et al., 1989)] or gene products of other viruses (e.g. EBV, CMV, hepatitis B and herpesvirus).
These triggers can act to up-regulate host regulatory proteins, including the transcription factor NF-κB which binds to a site within the LTR, thereby enhancing viral transcription (Duh et al., 1989; Griffin et al., 1989; Tong-Starksen et al., 1987). Tat stimulates transcription from the viral LTR by interacting with a regulatory element in the 5' end, called the trans-activation-responsive region (TAR) (Sharp & Marciniak, 1989). This produces a modified transcription complex which is then able to transcribe the remainder of the HIV genome efficiently. Tat is also able to increase the density of RNA polymerases found downstream of the promoters and acts as an elongation factor. Transcription of the HIV genome results in three different mRNA species (Fig.I.3): 1) multiply spliced mRNAs which encode the viral regulatory proteins (tat, rev, and nef) and are the first mRNAs produced (Early mRNA), 2) later singly spliced mRNAs which encode env and accessory proteins (vpu, vif, and vpr) (Late mRNA) and 3) unspliced mRNAs which act both as the virion RNA and mRNA for gag-pol (Late mRNA) (Kim et al., 1989). The early product tat (trans-activator of transcription) enhances transcription from the viral LTR by interacting with a regulatory element in the 5' LTR, called the trans-activation-responsive region (TAR) (Sharp & Marciniak, 1989). Accumulation of the other early product rev results in a switch to production of ‘late mRNAs’ while inhibiting ‘early mRNA’ production (Malim et al., 1989). Rev overcomes the RNA splicing mechanism by binding to a rev-responsive element (RRE) in the RNA resulting in production of singly and unspliced viral mRNAs encoding the structural proteins of the virus (gag, pol and env) and full-length genomic RNA.
Fig. 1.2. HIV-1 long terminal repeat DNA with potential binding sites for DNA and RNA binding proteins (reviewed by Ou et al., 1995)

COUP = ovalbumin upstream promoter
NF-AT = nuclear factor of activated T cells
TCF-1α = T cell activator-1α
UBP = untranslated binding protein
AP-1 = activator protein
USF = upstream stimulatory factor
NF-κB = nuclear factor
LBP-1 = binding protein-1

Fig. 1.3. Regulation of HIV gene expression (reviewed by Karn, 1995b)
Therefore, in host cell with minimal transcriptional activity, production of viral mRNAs and proteins would also be minimal, leading to latency of the integrated provirus.

iv) **Assembly and release of virions**

Env glycoproteins are synthesised as a gp160 precursor which host proteases cleave into amino-terminal gp120 and carboxy-terminal gp41. Gp41 contains a trans-membrane domain, spanning the host cellular membrane. Other viral structural components accumulate on the inner surface of the cytoplasmic membrane initiating the formation of an immature virus particle. The budding particles incorporate dimerized genomic RNA molecules, tRNA primers, the myristoylated gag and gag-pol precursor glycoproteins. HIV particles become enclosed by an envelope of host-cell lipid bilayer containing env glycoprotein. During or shortly after budding, viral particles mature. Maturation is accompanied by structural rearrangements leading to the assembly of a mature core structure (Luciw, 1996). Protease cleavage of the gag and gag-pol is essential in the maturation of retrovirus particles, as mutations in protease lead to production of non-infectious virus particles that contain uncleaved core proteins (Kohl et al, 1988; Katoh et al, 1985; Crawford and Goff, 1985).

HIV replication *in vivo* occurs continuously (Ho et al, 1995). Perselson et al (1996) developed a mathematical model to investigate HIV-1 dynamics *in vivo* using HIV-1 plasma viral load data collected after the administration of a potent HIV-1 protease inhibitor, Ritonavir. The average life-span of
productively infected cells was estimated to be 2.2 days and that of free virus in plasma was estimated to be 0.3 days. The average total HIV-1 production was estimated to be $10.3 \times 10^9$ virions per day and the average HIV-1 generation time (i.e. the time from release of a virion to release of a new generation of virions after infecting another cell) 2.6 days. The virus has a high mutation rate ($3 \times 10^{-5}$ mutation rate per nucleotide per replication cycle) since RT lacks proofreading activity and does not correct errors in DNA synthesis. Most mutations will confer a selective disadvantage to the virion, but some will be selected for, either by conferring resistance to anti-retroviral drugs or allowing evasion of the host immune response (Kusumi et al, 1992).

I.4. Cellular Tropism of HIV-1

HIV-1 infects cells that express cell surface CD4, including T cells, macrophages, DCs and brain microglia, via interaction of gp120 with CD4. CD4 was shown to be the primary receptor for HIV entry, as introduction of the CD4 gene rendered non-susceptible human cells susceptible to infection (Dalgleish et al, 1984). However, the requirement of an unknown second co-receptor was apparent, as human CD4 expression did not render rodent cells susceptible. In addition, HIV strains display cell tropisms that cannot be accounted for by CD4 being the single receptor for HIV. HIV-1 grown in T-cell lines in vitro can infect CD4 T cell lines and primary T cells, but not macrophages. However, many primary isolates of HIV infect primary T cells
and macrophages rather than T cell lines. These two types of viruses were initially referred to as T and M-tropic, respectively (Koyanagi et al, 1987; Fisher et al, 1988). M-tropic non-syncytium inducing isolates infect macrophages and primary T cells but not transformed T-cell lines, whereas T-tropic syncytium inducing isolates infect both primary T cells and T-cell lines but not macrophages.

I.4.1. Chemokine receptor usage by HIV-1 and their natural ligands

The HIV-1 co-receptors were shown to be receptors for chemokines and are responsible for binding the surface membranes of the host cell and the virus together to allow fusion of the membranes and viral entry. M-tropic strains utilise CCR5 primarily (Dragic et al, 1996; Alkhatib et al, 1996) and T-tropic strains utilise CXCR4 (Feng et al, 1996). These different virus strains are termed R5 strains or CCR5-utilising virus and X4 strains or CXCR4-utilising virus, respectively (Berger et al, 1998). Other chemokine receptors mediating HIV-1 entry include CCR2b, present on macrophages and CCR3 which is expressed on eosinophils and only at low levels on T cells, monocytes and DCs (Doranz et al, 1996; Rubbert et al, 1998). The env gene, particularly a region of gp120 that includes the V3 loop, determines T- versus M-tropism (Berger, 1997) with each type of isolate requiring different co-receptors. The co-receptors are either α or β-chemokine receptors (table I.2) which are seven transmembrane receptors from the large family of G protein coupled receptors which respond to chemokines, neurotransmitters and peptide hormones. The α-
chemokines (CXC chemokines) contain a single amino acid between the first and second N-terminal cysteine residues and they chemoattract and activate neutrophils primarily. The β-chemokines (CC chemokines) have adjacent cysteine residues and chemoattract and activate monocytes, lymphocytes and basophils. The natural chemokine ligands of these co-receptors inhibit or suppress infection of cells with HIV-1 by receptor competition. RANTES and macrophage inflammatory proteins (MIP-1α and MIP-1β), the natural ligands of CCR5, inhibit infection with M-tropic HIV-1 strains (Cocchi et al, 1995, Dragic et al, 1996). Stromal cell-derived factor-1 (SDF-1), the ligand of CXCR4, inhibits infection with T-tropic strains (Bleul et al, 1996; Oberlin et al, 1996). Similarly, exotaxin competes with HIV-1 for CCR3 (Choe et al, 1996), while monocyte chemotactic proteins (MCP-2, -3) compete with HIV-1 for CCR2 (Bisset et al, 1997; Schols et al, 1997). The macrophage-derived chemokine (MDC) inhibits a variety of HIV-1 strains irrespective of their tropism (Pal et al, 1997). It has also been demonstrated that the occupation of CCR5 and CXCR4 by their natural ligands results in the internalisation of these receptors, which may contribute to the suppressive effect of chemokines on HIV infectivity by reducing co-receptors densities (Amara et al, 1997).

The chemokines, RANTES, MIP-1α and MIP-1β were the first CD8+ T cell derived factors that were identified to mediate HIV suppression (Cocchi et al, 1995). In addition to chemokines, CD8+ T cells can release other soluble factors capable of suppressing viral replication, including cytotoxic molecules that mediate lysis of virus-infected cells such as IL-16 (Baier et al, 1995) and
as yet unidentified factors termed 'CD8\(^+\) T cell antiviral factor (CAF)'. IL-16 which is a natural ligand for CD4 was shown to inhibit HIV-1 replication in CD4\(^+\) T cells, macrophages and DCs \textit{in vitro} (Truong \textit{et al}, 1999; Hermann \textit{et al}, 1999). It has been demonstrated that filtered CD8\(^+\) T-cell culture supernatants can suppress HIV-1 replication in naturally infected CD4\(^+\) T cells without affecting CD4\(^+\) T cell proliferation (Mackewicz and Levy, 1992; Brinchman \textit{et al}, 1990; Mackewicz \textit{et al}, 1994). Furthermore, Mackewicz and Levy (1992) have reported that asymptomatic individuals possess higher levels of CAF which are maintained over long periods of time. As disease progresses, CAF levels decline and are undetectable in AIDS patients (Mackewicz \textit{et al}, 1994). Studies examining the effect of recombinant cytokines on HIV replication, the effect of anti-cytokine neutralising antibodies on CAF activity and by directly measuring the relative levels of known cytokines and chemokines in CAF-containing and non-CAF-containing culture supernatants, have indicated that CAF lacks identity to known cytokines (Mackewicz \textit{et al}, 1994; Levy \textit{et al}, 1996).

'Dual' tropism, HIV-1 isolates displaying both M- and T-tropism, is common among syncytium-inducing (SI) HIV strains. Such frequent dual receptor usage suggests that most SI isolates in fact contain a mixed population of SI and non-syncytium-inducing (NSI) quasi-species of virus capable of using both CCR5 and CXCR4. In addition, this 'dual' tropism of SI strains could suggest adaptation of HIV-1 to use CXCR4 during phenotypic evolution without losing the ability to use CCR5 (Zhang \textit{et al}. 1996). However, a study
by Scarlatti et al (1997) argues against this concept. They have found a consistent pattern in the evolution of viral co-receptor usage and sensitivity to chemokine-mediated suppression in a longitudinal follow-up of children with progressive HIV-1 infection. Viral isolates obtained during the asymptomatic stages of HIV-1 infection mainly used CCR5 as a co-receptor and were inhibited by its natural ligands but not by SDF-1. In contrast, the majority of the isolates obtained after disease progression had acquired the ability to use CXCR4 and, in some cases, CCR3, while gradually losing CCR5 usage. Furthermore, all these latter isolates were resistant to β-chemokines and most were resistant to SDF-1. In children who progressed to AIDS without a shift to CXCR4 usage, all sequential isolates were CCR5-dependent but showed a reduced sensitivity to β-chemokines. Changes in the V3 domain of gp120 were associated with a loss of sensitivity to β-chemokines and a shift in co-receptor usage (Scarlatti et al, 1997).

[N.B. New nomenclature for chemokines listed in table 1.2 below (Zlotnik and Yoshie, 2000): GRO-α/MGSA-α=CXCL1, GRO-β/MGSA-β=CXCL2, GRO-γ/MGSA-γ=CXCL3, ENA-78=CXCL5, NAP-2=CXCL7, IL-8=CXCL8, Mig=CXCL9, IP-10=CXCL10, SDF-1=CXCL12, MCP-1=CCL2, MIP-1α=CCL3, MIP-1β=CCL4, RANTES=CCL5, MCP-3=CCL7, MCP-2=CCL8, Eotaxin=CCL11, MCP-4=CCL13, ELC/MIP-3β=CCL19, MIP-3α=CCL20, Secondary lymphoid tissue chemokines (SLC)/6Ckine=CCL21]
Table I.2. Chemokine receptors and their natural ligands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemokine family</th>
<th>Receptor name</th>
<th>Natural ligands</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>α-chemokine</td>
<td>CXCR1 (IL-8RA)</td>
<td>IL-8, GRO-α/MGSA-α, NAP-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCR2 (IL-8RB)</td>
<td>IL-8, GRO-α, -β, -γ/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MGSA-α, -β, -γ, NAP-2, NAP-2,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ENA-78, IP-10, Mig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCR3</td>
<td>IP-10, Mig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CXCR4 (fusin,</td>
<td>SDF-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LESTR, humstr,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LCR-1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-chemokine</td>
<td>CCR1</td>
<td>MIP-1α, -1β, MCP-3, RANTES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR2a (MCP-1RA)</td>
<td>MCP-1, -2, -3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR2b (MCP-1RB)</td>
<td>MCP-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR3</td>
<td>Eotaxin, RANTES, MCP-2, -3, -4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR4</td>
<td>MIP-1α, RANTES, MCP-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR5</td>
<td>MIP-1α, -1β, RANTES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR6</td>
<td>MIP-1α, -3α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CCR7</td>
<td>MIP-3β, Secondary lymphoid tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>chemokines (SLC)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.4.2. Chemokine receptor gene mutations

Chemokine receptor gene mutations have been described which may affect HIV infection and disease progression and can be divided into three groups.

i) **Mutations in protein structure: CCRA32, CCR5-m303 and CCR2-64I**

A 32 base pair deletion (Δ32) in the CCR5 gene has been described (Paxton *et al*, 1996; Liu *et al*, 1996; Samson *et al*, 1996%). Homozygosity for CCR5Δ32 is found in Caucasian populations, in Northern Europe in particular, with an allele frequency of 0.092 but is absent in African and Asian populations (Samson *et al*, 1996%). CCR5Δ32 homozygous individuals do not express
CCR5 on the cell surface, preventing viral entry via this co-receptor. Such individuals are apparently resistant to infection with M-tropic viruses. A higher frequency of heterozygosity for CCR5Δ32 has been demonstrated in HIV-1-infected long-term non-progressors (31%) compared with rapid progressors (16%) among homosexual men, but not in haemophiliacs, suggesting that heterozygosity results in delayed disease progression within the homosexual population (Dean et al, 1996). CCR5Δ32 heterozygosity in children did not appear to reduce the risk of perinatal acquisition of HIV-1 or delay disease progression (Edelstein et al, 1997; Rousseau et al, 1997). Although homozygosity for the CCR5Δ32 confers very high resistance to HIV infection, homozygous individuals may still be infected (Biti et al, 1997). These individuals might have been infected by an M-tropic strain via a receptor such as CCR1, CCR2b or CCR3 or by a T or dual-tropic virus (Biti et al, 1997).

CCR5-m303 is a rarer mutation (frequency of 0.01) with similar effects to Δ32 (Quillent et al, 1998; Voevodin et al, 1999). The CCR2b-64I mutation is a substitution of valine to isoleucine at amino acid 64 on the CCR2 gene (Smith et al, 1997). This mutation is more commonly distributed than CCR5Δ32 and does not affect HIV transmission, but is associated with a two to three year delay in disease progression to AIDS (Kostrikis et al, 1998; Rizzardi et al, 1998).
ii) **Mutations in regulation of gene expression: e.g. CCR5-59653T**

CCR5-59653T is a mutation in the regulatory region of the CCR5 gene (Mummidi *et al.*, 1997) and is inherited with the CCR2 mutation, CCR2b-64I (Kostrikis *et al.*, 1998). The CCR5-59653T mutation appears to result in reduced expression of CCR5 on the cell surface and therefore may reduce the rate infection of cells by HIV-1 (Kostrikis *et al.*, 1998).

iii) **Mutation of the chemokine ligand: e.g. SDF-1 3'UTR-801G-A**

SDF-1-3'UTR-801G-A is a mutation in the 3' untranslated region of the SDF-1 gene (Winkler *et al.*, 1998). The homozygous state appears to result in increased SDF-1 production, which may then compete with X4 strains of HIV-1 for binding to CXCR4 and thus delaying disease progression (Winkler *et al.*, 1998).

These mutations appear to have no effect upon the health of the uninfected individual, even in the homozygous state, reflecting the degenerate nature of the large chemokine and chemokine receptor families. Therefore, the lack of adverse effects of these mutations may provide an attractive target for future anti-retroviral therapies.
I.5. TRANSMISSION OF HIV

HIV is transmitted vertically from mother to child in utero, during delivery (intrapartum), or postnatally through breast-feeding. HIV-1 is also transmitted by sexual contact, or by contact with infected blood (e.g. blood transfusion, blood products or in intravenous drug users). Although the mechanisms of HIV transmission are not yet fully understood there are certain facts which are well documented including:

i) Transmission of HIV-1 is predominantly restricted to R5 strains (Zhu et al, 1993; Roos et al, 1992).

ii) HIV-1 isolates from seroconvertors who were infected by sexual contact represent minor variants of the viral species found in the blood of the transmitter (Zhu et al, 1996). Sequence homogeneity has also been observed in seroconverting haemophiliacs (Pang et al, 1992; Wolfs et al, 1992).

I.5.1. Vertical Transmission

Over 90% of children infected with HIV are babies born to HIV+ women (AIDS epidemic update, December 1999, http://www.unaids.org). Mother-to-child transmission may occur at three different stages: during gestation, during delivery and by breast-feeding (Peckham & Gibb, 1995; Logan et al, 1988; Ziegler et al, 1985). At least two thirds of infections in non-breastfed children are acquired around the day of birth (during labour and delivery) and
the other one third of infections in non-breastfed children are acquired in the last three weeks of pregnancy (Mock et al, 1999; Rouzioux et al, 1995; De Rossi et al, 1993; Ehrnst et al. 1991). Breast-feeding may contribute to between one-third and two-thirds of infections in infants (Simonon et al, 1994; Ekpini et al, 1997). Encephalopathy, opportunistic infections, and death before 2 years of age are the most severe clinical manifestations of HIV-1 disease in children (Rousseau et al, 1997). Reported vertical transmission rates vary from 13% in Europe to 40% in Africa in HIV-1 infected pregnant women receiving no anti-retroviral therapy (Bryson, 1996). Factors associated with increased transmission of HIV from mother to infant include increased levels of virus in blood, the absence of neutralising maternal antibodies against the viral envelope, especially to the V3 loop, a reduced CD4^+ cell count, the presence of maternal p24 antigenemia at the time of delivery, the presence of HIV-1 with increased in vitro replication in macrophages and prolonged labour and rupture of the membranes (Lathey et al, 1999; Kuhn et al, 1997b; Thea et al, 1997; Cao et al, 1997; Bryson, 1996; Roques et al, 1993; Ades et al, 1991; Rossi et al, 1989). Among these factors the HIV-1 viral load in the blood and genital secretions of the mother appear to play the most important role in mother-to-child transmission. It has been suggested that in utero transmission may be associated with cell-free or cell-associated virus crossing the placenta and increased intrapartum risk may be due to maternal-infant transfusions, disruptions of the placental barrier or direct contact with maternal blood or cervicovaginal secretions (Mock et al, 1999). Therefore, elective caesarean-section delivery, before the membrane ruptures,
may reduce the risk of vertical transmission by avoiding direct contact with maternal vaginal secretions and infected blood (European Mode of Delivery Collaboration, 1999). HIV-1 has been detected in oropharyngeal and gastric aspirates of neonates born to HIV-1 infected mothers (Mandelbrot et al., 1999). The foetus may be exposed to HIV present in cervicovaginal secretions (Mostad and Kreiss, 1996), through the mucosae, oropharynx and digestive tract (Mandelbrot et al., 1999).

Such types of exposure may be a mechanism for postnatal transmission through breast feeding as well as perinatal transmission (Leroy et al., 1998; Mandelbrot et al., 1999). HIV-1 is present as free-virus (Lewis et al., 1998) and cell (macrophage and T cell)-associated virus in milk of HIV-infected mothers (Vonesch et al., 1992; Southern, 1998). Mastitis [an inflammatory process in the breast allowing inflammatory cells and extracellular fluid to enter the milk (Thomsen et al., 1984)] raises HIV-1 load in breast milk and hence may increase the risk of transmission of HIV-1 from mother to infant (Semba et al., 1999).

1.5.2. Transmission via contact with HIV-infected blood

Transmission of HIV by blood transfusions, plasma, or blood cell products (e.g. platelets) occurs either via free virus or virus-infected cells (Ward et al., 1989). Studies of transfusion recipients have suggested that the clinical stage of the infected donor (e.g. large number of virus-infected cells, free virus, or
the type of virus present in the donor’s blood) can influence the progression to
disease in the recipient.

**1.5.3. Sexual Transmission**

Heterosexual transmission is responsible for more than 90% of HIV-1
infections in Africa and is increasing more rapidly than all other modes of
transmission in the US, Europe, and most other regions of the world (Caceres
and Hearse, 1996; Mastro and De Vincenzi, 1996; Lee *et al*, 1996;
http://www.unaids.org). The rate of heterosexual transmission has been
estimated to be approximately one in every 1000 coital acts in both North
American (Padian *et al*, 1997) and Uganda (Gray *et al*, 2001) couples where
one partner was HIV-1 positive. In these studies, higher rates of transmission
were highly associated with genital ulceration and higher plasma viral loads.

In order to establish infection within the female via the heterosexual route of
transmission, HIV must cross the epithelial barrier of the female reproductive
tract and ultimately infect CD4+ T cells and macrophages either within the
underlying submucosal tissue or within the draining lymph nodes, with
subsequent systemic infection. Therefore, the transfer of HIV across the
mucosal epithelium is a key event in sexual transmission of HIV-1.

The surface of the female genital tract is covered with epithelial cells which
provide a protective barrier for the underlying tissue and is also covered with
antimicrobial secretions including lactoferrin, lysozyme and both transmembrane mucins (e.g. Mucin 1 or episialin) and secretory mucins (DeSouza et al, 1999; Gendler and Spicer, 1995; Hilkens et al, 1992; Lamblin and Roussel, 1993). The epithelial cells in the female genital tract are composed of columnar, squamous and transitional cells. The vagina and ectocervix, the tissues which would be exposed to HIV^ semen to the greatest extent, are comprised of five distinct cell layers: from the lumen the first three layers are the superficial, transitional, and intermediate layers (fig.1.4). Each is composed of approximately 10 rows of squamous epithelial cells ('stratified epithelium'). Beneath these layers are the parabasal and basal layers, containing one to two rows of columnar epithelial cells (Witkin, 1993). In contrast, the endocervix and uterus are composed of a single layer of epithelial cells ('simple epithelium') which is similar to the rectum. This may explain the higher frequency of rectal transmission in homosexual men, along with the greater likelihood of epithelial damage during anal sex. HIV-1 susceptible cells, Langerhans' cells, CD4^ T cells and macrophages are predominantly present in the epithelium, parabasal and basal layers of the vagina and ectocervix (Johansson et al, 1999; Poppe et al, 1998; Morris et al, 1983).

Several mechanisms have been proposed to mediate and/or facilitate the transfer of HIV-1 across the mucosal epithelium:

i) Direct infection of epithelial cells with HIV
Fig. L4. The female genital tract

(a) Section through the vagina and cervix (adapted from Hall-Craggs, 1990).

(b) Schematic diagram of cervix showing the endocervix and ectocervix.

(c) Typical cornified original squamous epithelium of the vagina and ectocervix showing five well-defined layers: from the lumen, superficial (1), transitional or intraepithelial (2), intermediate (3), parabasal (4), and basal (5) layers (adapted from Jordan & Singer, 1976).

(d) Normal columnar lining epithelium of the endocervix (adapted from Patten, 1978). The endocervix is composed of a single layer of columnar epithelial cells. Most lymphocytes (CD4+ T cells, CD8+ T cells and macrophages) reside within the lamina propria in close proximity to the basal membrane. In addition, the majority of Langerhans cells also reside within close proximity to the basal membrane but may be found in both the epithelium and lamina propria layers.
HIV-1 has been shown to infect the human cervical epithelial cell line ME180 in vitro (Tan et al, 1993). Exposure of this cell line to cell-free HIV-1 resulted in non-productive infection demonstrated by DNA PCR. However, productive and cytopathic infection followed exposure of ME180 cells to HIV-infected T cell lines. HIV-1 has also been shown to transcytose through tight monolayers of human intestinal and endometrial epithelial cell lines in vitro (Bomsel, 1997). Therefore, these studies describe a possible efficient mechanism for heterosexual transmission of HIV-1, with virus crossing the intact genital epithelial barrier and gaining access to the submucosal CD4^+ cells. However, the relatively low rate HIV-1 transmission per heterosexual coital act described above would argue against such an efficient mechanism. Other studies employing primary cultures of human epithelial cells have demonstrated the limitations of studies using transformed cell lines, which may bear little relation to the in vivo situation. HIV-1 infection has been demonstrated in cell preparations derived from the human cervix, but the infection was restricted to CD45^+ leukocytes with no evidence of epithelial cell infection (Patrick et al, 1993). HIV-1 virions have been shown to associate with human primary cervical epithelial cells and remain in an extracellular location (Dezzutti et al, 2001) with virus then being transferred to activated PBMCs. However, these cultures were not polarised monolayers of cells and therefore would not equate to the intact epithelium found in vivo. Polarised cervical epithelial cultures have been shown to be an effective barrier against HIV-1 (Greenhead et al, 2000). Neither productive infection nor virion transcytosis could be detected following exposure of intact cervical
epithelium to both cell-free and cell-associated HIV-1. Non-polarised cultures were productively infected with HIV-1, with the target cells residing within the submucosal tissue and infection enhanced by immune activation.

ii) Disruption of the epithelial barrier

For many sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) including HIV infection, mucosal integrity may be an important factor affecting transmission. Transmission of HIV would be particularly likely if there are open lesions or ulcers and inflammatory cells present due to other STDs, thereby providing a portal for HIV entry (Wasserheit, 1992; Dickerson et al, 1996; Plummer, 1998; Cohen, 1998; Gray et al, 1999). The one in 1000 rate of heterosexual transmission described previously (Padian et al, 1997; Gray et al, 2001) is increased approximately four-fold in the presence of ulcerative genital disease (Gray et al, 2001). In HIV+ patients, genital tract shedding of HIV is increased with ulcerative STDs (Ghys et al, 1997; Schacker et al, 1998; Dyer et al, 1998; Gadkari et al, 1998) and treatment reduces but does not abolish HIV shedding (Gadkari et al, 1998; Ghys et al, 1997). Bacterial vaginosis may also increase susceptibility to HIV-1 infection through loss of naturally occurring virucidal mechanisms. Bacterial vaginosis results in an absence of hydrogen peroxide-producing lactobacilli (Klebanoff and Coombs, 1991) and a reduction in myeloperoxidase activity (Klebanoff and Coombs, 1992). Furthermore bacterial pathogens such as C. trachomatis both recruit and interact with polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN) in vivo and the activated PMN in turn activate mononuclear cells by generating reactive oxygen
intermediates during phagocytosis of the bacteria and hence increase HIV replication (Ho et al, 1995). In summary, the potential mechanisms by which STDs may increase HIV transmission include:

1) Increased number or activation of macrophages, CD4+ T cells or DCs in the genital tract (Levine et al, 1998; Greenhead et al, 2000).

2) Disruption of the epithelial barrier (Kiviat et al, 1990).


4) Shedding of inflammatory mediators in semen (Ramsey et al, 1995) which may activate DCs, macrophages and T cells in the mucosa of the female reproductive tract.

Contraception also influences transmission of HIV. Condoms are lubricated with a spermicide containing nonoxynol-9. In addition spermicidal sponges for use by the female also contain nonoxynol-9. Nonoxynol-9 is active against HIV and other sexually transmitted pathogens (Stafford et al, 1998) by disruption of cell membranes and viral envelopes (Reitmeijer, 1988). However, nonoxynol-9 may also damage the epithelium of the female reproductive tract, thereby increasing susceptibility to HIV infection. Hormonal contraception has been shown to increase susceptibility to HIV infection (Plummer et al, 1991). This may be due to cervical ectopy or thinning of the vaginal epithelium, in progesterone only contraception in particular (Marx et al, 1996).

iii) Infection or association of HIV with epithelial Langerhans’ cells
Mucosal epithelial dendritic cells (DCs) [Langerhans' cells (LC)] have been suggested to be the first cells to be infected after mucosal exposure to HIV as shown by studies using rhesus macaque models of Simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) infection (Zambruno et al, 1995; Spira et al, 1996; Blauvelt, 1997; Joag et al, 1997; Miller and Hu 1999) and using skin explants (Reece et al, 1998). DCs may then transfer HIV to T cells within the lymph node followed by systemic spread of infection (Spira et al, 1996; Masurier et al, 1998). As this possibility is a focus of this thesis, DC biology and association with HIV is now discussed.

1.6. THE BIOLOGY OF DENDRITIC CELL

The literal meaning of a dendritic cell would be a cell that possesses dendrites. This term could therefore be applied to many cell types including brain and nerve cells and macrophages. However, in the field of immunology, the term dendritic cell (DC) is used for a population of cells commonly termed antigen presenting cells (APC). These DCs have the unique ability to take up, process and present antigen in association with MHC class II to CD4 T cells followed by stimulation of naive T cells, thereby initiating a primary immune response to an antigen. However, DCs, and macrophages, may also present antigen to and stimulate memory T cells. The biology of this dendritic cell has been recently reviewed by Hart (1997) and Banchereau et al (2000).
Another cell with immunological function with dendritic morphology is the follicular dendritic cell (FDC) which is found in the germinal centres of the lymph node. FDCs are derived from a separate lineage to DCs. FDCs have the capacity to capture and retain whole antigens in the form of immune complexes and play a critical role in the generation of the humoral immune response and also in activation and selection of B cells (Grouard and Clark, 1997). B cells recognise whole antigen via cell surface expression of antibody. Unless stated, all references to DCs in this thesis relate to the T cell stimulatory lineage of dendritic cells rather than the FDC.

DC functioning from antigen capture to T cell stimulation involves several individual steps requiring alteration of the DC functional abilities and phenotype, with these steps occurring in separate microenvironments within the body, requiring migration of the DC. The following is a summary of the DC life cycle and function:

i) DCs are CD45^ bone marrow derived leukocytes. Immature DCs migrate to non-lymphoid tissues via the blood stream where they may encounter antigen. One well characterised tissue DC is the Langerhans cell (LC) located in the epithelium of the skin and mucosa. Mucosal tissues in particular would be expected to contain numerous DCs in order to meet the greater antigenic challenge at these exposed sites. In addition, inflammation leads to rapid accumulation of DCs in infected or damaged tissues.
ii) Immature DCs in the tissues capture and internalise antigen efficiently via several pathways including macropinocytosis, receptor mediated endocytosis and phagocytosis.

iii) Maturation of the DC to an antigen presenting phenotype is associated with migration of the DC from the tissue to the lymph node via the afferent lymphatics. Therefore, antigen sampled in the tissues is transported to lymphocyte rich lymphoid tissue. Maturation involves a reduction in phagocytic capacity, up-regulation of T cell co-stimulatory molecules and presentation of processed antigen in association with MHC molecules.

iv) Prior to antigen presentation and T cell stimulation, the migrated DC may associate with several T cells in the lymph node via interaction between adhesion molecules, forming a DC-T cell cluster. This process would facilitate recognition of the presented antigen by a specific T cell.

v) Following recognition by an antigen-specific T cell, the DC stimulates the naïve T cell via expression of co-stimulatory molecules such as CD80 and CD86, thereby inducing a primary immune response to the antigen. In addition the DC may receive stimulatory signals from the T cell via interaction between CD40 expressed on DCs and CD40 ligand (CD40L/CD154) expressed on T cells.

There are at least three distinct subpopulations of DCs (fig. I.5): two in the myeloid lineage [LCs and interstitial (dermal) DCs/DC1] and one in the lymphoid lineage (lymphoid DCs). CD123^CD11c^ pre-DCs (pDC2), also known as plasmacytoid or IFN-α producing cells [IPC (Cella et al, 1999;
Fig.1.5. Developmental pathway of DCs

- **CD34* progenitor**
  - Myeloid DC precursor
  - Monocyte intermediate
    - (CD14+CD11c+CD1a*)
      - GM-CSF/IL-4
      - M-CSF
      - Macrophage
  - Lymphoid DC
    - pDC2/IPC
      - IL-3/CD40L
      - Lymphoid DC/DC2
        - (CD14+CD11c+CD123*)
        - (CD11c+CD123*)
    - LC
      - GM-CSF/IL-4/TGF-β
      - LC
        - (CD1a+CD11c+Lag3*)
      - mDC/DC1
        - (CD1a+CD11c+)

**Lymphoid Lineage**
**Myeloid Lineage**
Siegal et al., 1999), give rise to lymphoid DCs [CD11c'CD123⁺ (also known as DC2)] when cultured and activated with IL-3 and CD40 ligand (CD40L) (Grouard et al., 1997; Olweus et al., 1997). CD40L-activated DC2 produce IL-1α, IL-1β, IL-6, IL-8 and IL-10 but no IL-4 (Rissoan et al., 1999) and may preferentially stimulate Th2-type responses (Rissoan et al., 1999; Pulendran et al., 1999). The myeloid lineage DCs can be further differentiated into two distinct subsets. One is the LC precursor cell-derived LC subset (CD14⁻CD11c⁻CD1a⁺) and the other is the monocyte-derived DC subset (CD14⁺CD11c⁻CD1a⁺) which is also known as interstitial (dermal) DCs (Nestle et al., 1994) or DC1 (Rissoan et al., 1999). Monocyte-derived DCs produce large amounts of IL-12 on CD40L activation and may preferentially stimulate Th1-type response (Rissoan et al., 1999; Pulendran et al., 1999). The terms DC1 and DC2 are based on the cytokine profile produced by these cells, those which produce type 1 cytokines are called DC1 and those which produce type 2 cytokines are called DC2. The corresponding mature DC progeny of both subsets of myeloid lineage DCs are equally potent in stimulating the proliferation of naïve T cells, but only interstitial DCs induce the IL-2-driven differentiation of naïve B cells in vitro (Caux et al., 1997).

Immature DCs in non-lymphoid tissues are specialised in the uptake and processing of antigens. DCs employ three distinct mechanisms for antigen uptake:
i) Fluid phase antigen uptake by macropinocytosis which is constitutive and allows continuous internalisation of large volumes of fluid (Sallusto et al, 1995).

ii) Receptor-mediated endocytosis via C-type lectin receptors such as the mannose receptor (Engering et al, 1997; Cella et al, 1997; Jiang et al, 1995; Sallusto et al, 1995), DC-SIGN (Geijtenbeek et al, 2000) and DEC-205 which is expressed on murine DCs and thymic epithelial cells (Jiang et al, 1995) or via Fc receptors [e.g. FcγRI (CD64), FcγRII (CD32), FcεRI and low-affinity FcεRII (CD23) (Cella et al, 1997; Fanger et al, 1996]. Mannose receptors bind to carbohydrate antigens, mediate endocytosis and release antigen in to a multivesicular endosome and then recycles back to the cell-surface, allowing continuous internalisation of antigen and maintaining a capacity for antigen capture (Cella et al, 1997; Sallusto et al, 1995). Human LCs lack functional mannose receptors and have poor endocytic capacity (Mommaas et al, 1999). However LCs do express an LC-specific C-type lectin (Langerin) (Valladeau et al, 1999; Valladeau et al, 1999).

iii) Phagocytosis of particles [e.g. apoptotic and necrotic cell fragments (Albert et al, 1998; Albert et al, 1998), bacteria (Inaba et al, 1993) and intracellular parasites (Moll et al, 1993)].

It is known that processed exogenous antigens in the form of short peptides are presented to CD4 T helper cells in a MHC class II-restricted manner. There is evidence for MHC class I-restricted presentation of exogenous antigens taken up by DCs by macropinocytosis or in a receptor-mediated
manner and are then presented to CD8+ CTLs (Rock et al, 1993; Norbury et al, 1995; Jondal et al, 1996; Norbury et al, 1997; Mitchell et al, 1998; Regnault et al, 1999). Several groups have attempted to define the mechanisms for MHC class I-restricted exogenous antigen presentation. Normal and TAP mutant cells and cell lines have been used along with cellular inhibitors selective for Golgi transport (Brefeldin A) or proteasomal activity (lactacystin and peptide aldehydes) and inhibitors targeting endosomal functions such as vesicular pH, proteolysis and transport. The suggested mechanisms for exogenous antigen presentation in a MHC class I-restricted manner are as follows:

i) **Brefeldin A-sensitive conventional pathway.** Internalised antigens may be released into the cytosol from the endocytic compartment for classical TAP-dependent MHC class I presentation (Norbury et al, 1997; Kovacsovics-Bankowski and Rock, 1995). The mechanism of antigen release into the cytosol is not fully understood but there is evidence for the involvement of carrier molecules or chaperones (Schirmbeck and Reimann, 1994; Jondal et al, 1996).

ii) **Brefeldin A-insensitive pathway**
Internalised antigens may be processed in endocytic compartments, generating peptides which are loaded onto post-Golgi MHC class I molecules in endosomes or at the cell surface after peptide regurgitation. (Liu et al, 1995; Schirmbeck et al, 1995; Harding and Song, 1994; Jondal et al, 1996).
Trafficking of DCs is regulated by cytokines and chemokines. Pro-inflammatory cytokines including IL-1 and TNF-α promote LC emigration (Cumberbatch et al, 1990; Wang et al, 1999). LC precursors (CD1a⁺CD14⁻) express CCR6 and respond selectively to MIP-3α secreted by keratinocytes (Charbonnier et al, 1999). CD14⁺ DC precursors (CD1a⁺CD14⁺) which differentiate into macrophage or monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs) and are more closely related to dermal DCs or interstitial DCs, respond to MIP-1α, MCP-3 and RANTES which can mediate the migration of these cells to injured or inflamed peripheral tissues (Charbonnier et al, 1999). Immature DCs express CCR1, CCR2, CCR3, CCR5 and CXCR1 (Rubbert et al, 1998; Sallusto et al, 1998; Yanagihara et al, 1998; Dieu et al, 1998). Maturation of DCs up-regulates expression of receptors for chemokines produced in lymphoid organs and down-regulates expression of receptors for inflammatory cytokines (Cyster, 1999; Sallusto et al, 1998; Sozzani et al, 1998; Yanagihara et al, 1998; Dieu et al, 1998). Mature DCs express high levels of CCR7, acquiring responsiveness to the Secondary Lymphoid tissue Chemokine (SLC / 6Ckine) and to EBV-induced molecule 1 Ligand Chemokine (ELC) [also known as MIP-3β (Yoshida et al, 1997)] (Sallusto et al, 1998; Yanagihara et al, 1998; Dieu et al, 1998; Cyster, 1999). Maturation also results in up-regulation of CXCR4 (Canque et al, 1999; Sallusto et al, 1998; Zaitseva et al, 1997), whose natural ligand, SDF-1 is constitutively secreted in lymphoid tissues (Delgado et al, 1998; Sallusto et al, 1998; Austyn 1998). Mature DCs display
reduced expression of CXCR1, CCR1, CCR5 (Sallusto et al, 1998) and CCR6 (Dieu et al, 1998; Carramolino et al, 1999).

For DC and T cell interactions to occur in lymph node T cell areas, adhesion molecules (Tsunetsugu-Yokota et al, 1997; Prickett et al, 1992; Starling et al, 1995; King et al, 1989), cytokines/chemokines (Sallusto et al, 1998; Adema et al, 1997) and co-stimulatory molecules (Gribben et al, 1995; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Caux et al, 1994) are required. DC-T cell cluster formation requires an intact DC cytoskeleton and protein kinase C activation to initiate the adhesive interaction (Prickett et al, 1990; Scheeren et al, 1991). Examples of adhesion molecules involved in DC-T lymphocyte interaction include (fig.1.6):

i) LFA-1 on DCs and ICAM-3 on resting T cells (Starling et al, 1995; Hauss et al, 1995).

ii) DC-SIGN on DCs and ICAM-3 on T cells (Geitenbeek et al, 2000^).

iv) LFA-3 on DCs and CD2 on T cells (Prickett et al, 1992; King et al, 1989).

DCs in the lymph node T cell areas secrete cytokines that act as chemoattractants for T cells. For instance, ELC/MIP-3^β secreted by mature DCs is involved in attracting both T cells expressing CCR7 as well as antigen carrying DCs (Sallusto et al, 1998), DC-CK1 selectively attracts naïve T cells (Adema et al, 1997). SDF-1, MCP-1, RANTES, MIP-1α and MIP-1β are also secreted by mature DCs (Sallusto et al, 1998). Expression of co-stimulatory molecules on DCs is enhanced on activation. Among the most important co-
Fig. 1.6. Examples of adhesion molecules involved in dendritic cell (DC) and T cell (TC) interaction

Intracellular adhesion molecule (ICAM)-3 on resting TC binds to (i) leukocyte function antigen (LFA)-1 or (ii) DC-SIGN expressed on DC. CD2 on TC binds to LFA-3 on DC (iii).
stimulatory signals are those delivered by members of the B7 family, which is to date composed of six members. B7.1 (CD80) and B7.2 (CD86), which bind to different sites of the CD28 molecule or to CTLA-4 on T cells, are capable of delivering a positive co-stimulatory signal (Thompson et al, 1989; Linsley et al, 1991) or a counter-regulatory negative signal (Linsley et al, 1991; Waterhouse et al, 1996), respectively. B7-H1 (PD-L1) and B7-H2 (B7-RP1) bind to the PD-1 (Freeman et al, 2000) and inducible co-stimulator [ICOS (Wang et al, 2000; Yoshinaga et al, 1999), respectively. The functions of B7-H1 and B7-H2 are not yet well documented. B7-H3 binds to a putative receptor on activated T cells that is distinct from CD28, CTLA-4, PD-1 and ICOS (Chapoval et al, 2001). B7-H3 co-stimulates proliferation of both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells, enhances the induction of cytotoxic T cells and selectively stimulates IFN-γ production by T cells (Chapoval et al, 2001). Expression of five members of B7 family listed above is not restricted to DCs, but B7-DC is expressed exclusively, as far as is known, on DCs and monocyte-derived DCs (Tseng et al, 2001). B7-DC which binds to PD-1, was shown to co-stimulate T cell proliferation and to induce IFN-γ but not IL-4 or IL-10 production by naïve T cells in mice (Tseng et al, 2001). CD40, a member of the TNF receptor family, is expressed on DCs and interacts with CD40L (CD154) (McLellan et al, 1996) expressed on activated, but not resting T cells (Caux et al, 1994). This induces IL-12 production by the DC (Shu et al, 1995), which is in turn required for activation of Th1 T cells.

I.6.1 Dendritic cells and their potential role in HIV-1 transmission
DC susceptibility to HIV infection has been shown both in vivo and in vitro (Patterson et al, 1994; Patterson et al, 1995), although the proviral load in T cells is 3-100 times higher than that in DCs (Patterson et al, 1998). There is evidence for transfer of virus between DCs and T cells by phylogenetic analysis of the V3 loop and flanking regions of the virus isolated from symptomatic HIV patients' DCs and T cells (Patterson et al, 1998). In vitro studies showed that HIV infection of DCs can be blocked by neutralising monoclonal antibodies and hence cell-to-cell transmission of the virus from DCs to T cells can be halted (Frankel et al, 1998). In addition, immature DCs can transmit R5 viral strains to blood monocytes and monocyte-derived macrophages with higher efficacy than mature DCs, with the CD11/CD18 family of adhesion molecules mediating DC-monocyte/macrophage interaction (Kacani et al, 1998).

There is evidence that subepithelial DCs, may be the first cells to be infected after mucosal exposure to HIV, as has been shown in studies using rhesus macaque models of SIV (Spira et al, 1996; Joag et al, 1997; Miller and Hu, 1999) and using skin explants (Reece et al, 1998). Therefore, it has been suggested that LCs may play a role in establishing HIV infection in lymph node T cells (Spira et al, 1996; Masurier et al, 1998). However, it has also been suggested that endocervical T cells may be the first cells to be infected in the female (Zhang et al, 1999) and this is discussed in chapter VI. DCs express CD4 and the co-receptors required for HIV fusion and entry.
(Patterson et al, 1995; Wright-Browne et al, 1997; Lee et al, 1999). The newly identified DC-specific ICAM-3 receptor, DC-SIGN, was also shown to bind to gp120 and hence to be involved in capture of HIV-1. Furthermore, an interaction between DC-SIGN and ICAM-3 facilitates the infection of T cells (Geijtenbeek et al, 2000). Freshly isolated LCs from skin epidermis express CCR5, the principal co-receptor for fusion and entry of R5 viral strains. These LCs do not express CXCR4 (Zaitseva et al, 1997) providing an explanation for the preferential sexual transmission of R5 viral strains. Such data does not however explain the M-tropic-restricted transmission that also occurs via other routes including vertical transmission and blood. M-tropic strains of virus, but not T-tropic strains, may enter DCs derived from the tonsil and thymus (Cameron et al, 1996). Peripheral blood DCs which are generally thought to be immature DCs, express CCR5 but low levels of CXCR4 (Lee et al, 1999). Expression of CXCR4 may be increased on DC maturation (Zaitseva et al, 1997; Zoeteweij et al, 1998; Lee et al, 1999). Expression of CXCR4 is also regulated by cytokines as is demonstrated by the fact that Th2 type cytokines, IL-4 and TGF-β1 up-regulate, whereas Th1 type cytokines IFN-α, IFN-β and IFN-γ inhibit CXCR4 expression (Zoeteweij et al, 1998). A relative increase in type-2 cytokines, which can occur during HIV infection (Stylianou et al, 1999; Meroni et al, 1996), may up-regulate CXCR4 expression on mature DCs favouring infection with X4 viral strains (Zoeteweij et al, 1998). HIV infection of DCs is blocked by the natural co-receptor ligands RANTES and SDF-1 (Rubbert et al, 1998; Granelli-Piperno et al, 1996). Evidence for the presence of a SDF-1 receptor other than
CXCR4 on DCs, which is used by both R5 and X4 viral strains, has been shown by a study of HIV infected individuals homozygous for Δ32CCR5 and by an inhibition assay with SDF-1 (Rubbert et al, 1998).

I.7. SEMEN

I.7.1. Composition of seminal fluid

Seminal fluid consists of various secretions of the male accessory reproductive organs (Geigy Scientific Tables, vol.1, 8th edition)(fig.I.7). The three main secretions are acid phosphatase (prostatic secretion), spermatozoa (testicular and epididymal secretion) and fructose (seminal vesicle secretion). About 10% of the dry mass of the total ejaculate consists of inorganic materials and 90% is organic (Table I.3). Some semen specimens contain antibodies of the IgA type which are capable of agglutinating spermatozoa and are significant with respect to male infertility. The normal pH of semen is slightly alkaline (7.2-8.0). Cell types other than spermatozoa in human semen include leukocytes, epithelial cells and immature germ cells. These are collectively referred to as 'non-spermatozoal cells' (NSC) or 'round cells'. Leukocytospermia (leukocyte counts in seminal fluid of more than 2x10⁹/ml) may indicate infection in the reproductive tract and large numbers of epithelial cells in semen may be an indication of infection or overactive masturbation. The presence of erythrocytes may indicate reproductive tract
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inorganic substances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chloride</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorus</td>
<td>As phosphorylcholine and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>glycerylphosphorylcholine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potassium</td>
<td>Mostly from the prostatic secretion; concentration increased in cystic fibrosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium</td>
<td>Mostly from the prostatic secretion; concentration increased in cystic fibrosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magnesium</td>
<td>Mostly from the prostatic secretion; concentration increased in cystic fibrosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinc</td>
<td>Almost exclusively from the prostatic secretion; bound to glycoproteins; concentration increased in cystic fibrosis and decreased in prostatitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogenous substances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ammonia</td>
<td>Increased on prolonged incubation at 37°C due to progressive proteolysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amino acids</td>
<td>24 different amino acids identified</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choline</td>
<td>Released from phosphorylcholine by acid phosphatase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphorylcholine</td>
<td>Hydrolysed to form phosphate and choline within 1 hour of ejaculation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycerylphosphoryl-</td>
<td>From the epididymis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choline</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine</td>
<td>Mainly from the epididymis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyamines</td>
<td>Putrescine, Spermidine, Spermine (refer text); from the prostatic secretion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteins</td>
<td>Gradually broken down by proteolytic enzymes and peptide hydrolases; eg. albumin, transferrin, lactoferrin, IgA, IgG, IgM, Lysozyme, Lactate dehydrogenase and acid phosphatase</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrate &amp;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolites</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose</td>
<td>Energy source for the spermatozoa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fructose</td>
<td>Formed almost entirely in the seminal vesicles; most important energy source for the spermatozoa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialic acid</td>
<td>Equally from both prostatic secretion and seminal vesicles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fucose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoinositol</td>
<td>Mostly from the prostatic secretion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorbitol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactic acid &amp;</td>
<td>Metabolites produced by the anaerobic metabolism of the spermatozoa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citric acid</td>
<td>Almost exclusively from the prostate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phospholipids</td>
<td>Phosphatidylcholine is preponderant in the plasma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostaglandin</td>
<td>Refer text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vit. B12 &amp; Ascorbic acid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormones</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnenolone, Androstenedione, Dihydropicosterone, Estradiol, Prolactin, Follicle-stimulating hormone, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section through the male pelvis (a) and testis (b)

The male reproductive system may be divided into four functional components:

- The testes, paired organs lying in the scrotal sac, are responsible for production of the spermatozoa and secretion of male sex hormones.

- A paired system of ducts, each consisting of ductuli efferentes, epididymis, ductus deferens and ejaculateatory duct, collect, store and conduct spermatozoa from each testis. The ejaculatory ducts converge on the urethra from which spermatozoa are expelled.

- Two exocrine glands, the paired seminal vesicles and the single prostate gland, secrete a nutritive and lubricating fluid medium (semen).

- The penis is the organ of copulation. A pair of small accessory glands, the bulbo-urethral glands of Cowper, secrete a fluid which lubricates the urethra for the passage of semen during ejaculation.
infection or damage to a small capillary. Ejaculation is immediately followed by coagulation of seminal fluid mediated by a clotting enzyme (proteinase) from the prostate acting on a fibrinogen-like protein from the seminal vesicles. Within 5 to 10 minutes of ejaculation, the gelatinous-viscous seminal fluid becomes liquefied due to proteolytic degradation of the coagulation product by a plasmin-like enzyme from the prostate gland. Chymotrypsin-like enzymes, dipeptidases and aminopeptidases also hydrolyse the clot fragments to tripeptides, dipeptides and free amino acids. The density and viscosity of the total ejaculate depends on the quantity of spermatozoa. The spermatozoa formed in the testicles migrate into the epididymis, where they are stored and subjected to a maturation process. The number of spermatozoa varies between individuals from less than 2x10⁷/ml to over 8x10⁷/ml. A high proportion of motile spermatozoa benefit fertility. In vitro, motility is temperature-dependent and is considerably higher at 37°C than at room temperature. The proportion of highly motile spermatozoa decreases with age. The spermatozoon consists of three parts: a head, mid-piece and tail. The head of spermatozoa contains the nucleus and acrosome. The acrosome is a modified lysozome containing a characteristic lipoglycoprotein complex which is associated with a number of enzymes. Some of the enzymes, in particular a trypsin-like proteinase (acrosin), are important for fertilisation and are involved in breaking open of the ovarian cumulus and penetration of the pellucid zone. The mid-piece of spermatozoa is rich in lipids and contains coenzymes. The fibrils of the axial filament contain adenosine triphosphatase required for energy transfer and hence ensure spermatozoal motility.
1.7.2. Immunological functions of seminal plasma

The main functions of seminal plasma (reviewed by Alexander and Anderson, 1987 and Kelly, 1997) include:

i) Facilitating spermatozoal transport.

ii) Prevention of a rapid loss of spermatozoa from vagina by providing a coagulating system.

iii) Provision of an energy source (fructose, glucose) and motility stimulant for spermatozoa.

iv) Serving as a highly buffered medium to overcome the acidic pH of the vagina.

v) Suppression of the host immune system by presence of immunosuppressive components such as prostaglandins, prostasome, polyamines, transforming growth factor (TGF)-β and complement inhibitors.

The immunological functions of the components of seminal plasma, in particular prostaglandins are addressed below.

i) Prostaglandins

It is known that human and primates have high levels of prostaglandins in semen at a concentration some $10^6$ times more than that of peripheral blood (reviewed by Kelly, 1997). Prostaglandins in human seminal plasma include
four main species, 19-hydroxy prostaglandin E (19-OH PGE) 1, 19-OH PGE2, PGE1 and PGE2. Prostaglandins, which are released by macrophages together with stimulatory agents and other suppressive agents, have immunomodulatory effects. For instance, PGE2 has been shown to have a pro-inflammatory role and activates/matures cultured DCs (monocyte-derived DCs) and subsequently induces IL-12 production by DCs (Rieser et al, 1997; Rieser et al, 1998; Portanova et al, 1996). In contrast to this pro-inflammatory activity of PGE2, PGE2 is also known to inhibit the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines by lipopolysacharide (LPS)-activated macrophages (Strassmann et al, 1994). PGE2 has also been shown to inhibit IL-12 production (Kraan et al, 1995; Kelly et al, 1997) and stimulate IL-10 production in whole blood culture (Strassmann et al, 1994; Kelly et al, 1997). This cytokine switch to a Th2-type may induce anergy or peripheral tolerance (Groux et al, 1996). Spermatozoa are allogeneic but whether or not they exhibit MHC antigens on their surface is controversial (Vince et al, 1995; Schaller et al, 1993; Hutter and Dohr, 1998). The cytokine switch induced by prostaglandins in seminal plasma could result in tolerance to spermatozoal antigens in female reproductive tract and may also influence viral infection. Immunosurveillance and killing mechanisms might be compromised by repeated exposure to prostaglandins in semen by inducing T cell anergy (Groux et al, 1996) and inhibition of cytotoxic responses.

ii) Prostasomes
Prostasomes are submicron organelles, enclosed in a lipid membrane (Ronquist and Brody, 1985). Their known immunosuppressive effects are the inhibition of T cell proliferation (Kelly et al, 1991) and modulation of phagocytic activity (Skibinski et al, 1992).

iii) **Polyamines**

Polyamines have been found to inhibit nitric oxide production, which is required for killing and phagocytic action in monocytes (Szabo et al, 1994) and have also been shown to inhibit pro-inflammatory cytokine production (Zhang et al, 1997).

iv) **Complement inhibitors**

Complement inhibitors in semen include decay accelerating factor (DAF; CD55), which promotes C3 breakdown (Rooney et al, 1993a), membrane cofactor protein (CD46) which inactivates C3 (Simpson and Holmes, 1993) and protectin (CD59) which binds to spermatozoa to provide protection from complement attack (Rooney et al, 1993b). Complement inhibitors have also been shown to be incorporated into the HIV envelope and induce resistance to complement attack (Saifuddin et al, 1995).

**I.7.3. HIV-1 in semen**

Semen is considered to be an important vehicle for the sexual spread of HIV-1 and thus the level of virus in semen would be an important determinant in
the sexual transmission of HIV-1. Since the first quantitation of HIV-1 in semen by Borzy and co-workers in 1988 using reverse transcriptase activity assays in a 'virus pellet' obtained by differential sucrose density centrifugation of cell-free seminal plasma from symptomatic individuals (Borzy et al., 1988), many researchers have quantitated HIV-1 RNA levels in semen (Rasheed et al., 1995; Liuzzi et al., 1996; Liuzzi et al., 1995; Gupta et al., 1997; Coombs et al., 1998; Dyer et al., 1998). Some researchers have detected HIV-1-infected seminal non-sperm cells (Quyale et al., 1997; Vernazza et al., 1996; Baccetti et al., 1991; Bagasra et al., 1988; Bagasra et al., 1990). Therefore, HIV-1 is present in semen both as cell-free virus and cell (seminal non-spermatozoal cell)-associated virus. However, the possibility that HIV-1 is carried by the spermatozoa themselves has been suggested. Several studies have been carried out to investigate the presence of HIV-1 DNA in spermatozoa and whether spermatozoa express CD4. A number of groups have presented data suggesting that HIV attaches to and infects spermatozoa (Bagasra et al., 1988; Bagasra et al., 1994; Baccetti et al., 1994; Scofield, 1992; Scofield et al., 1994; Gobert et al., 1990), possibly via a CD4-like molecule (Ashida and Scofield, 1987; Bagasra et al., 1994; Scofield et al., 1992; Scofield et al., 1994; Gobert et al., 1990). Some groups have failed to detect CD4 expression on sperm (Wolff and Anderson, 1988a; Wolff and Anderson, 1988b; El-Demiry et al., 1986) and could not detect HIV-1 particles or proviral sequences in sperm cells (Mermin et al., 1991; Van Voorhis et al., 1991; Quayle et al., 1997). CD4 or CD4-like molecules on spermatozoa could play an important role in infection of spermatozoa with HIV-1 since CD4 is
the primary cell receptor for HIV-1. Also binding of sperm to somatic cells via HLA-DR (Ashida and Scofield, 1987; Scofield et al, 1992) carries potential significance for HIV transmission, because HLA-DR is present on mucosal cells within the primate female reproductive tract, many of which are susceptible to HIV infection in vitro (Langhoff et al, 1991; Scofield et al, 1992). It has also been shown that carbohydrates appear to be critical for sperm binding to HLA-DR and thus sulphated carbohydrates such as heparin, dextran sulphate, and chondroitin sulphate, could enhance adhesion of sperm to HLA-DR, possibly by stabilising the sperm-HLA-DR interaction (Scofield et al, 1992). Technical differences in HIV-1 detection and sperm preparation methods, or contamination of spermatozoal preparations with seminal non-sperm cells, may have resulted in discrepancies in results obtained by different groups. The data obtained in this study are presented in chapter III.

Molecules other than CD4 have been identified on spermatozoa, which may play a role in binding of HIV-1. Galactosylceramide or a related compound is present on the surface membrane of the mid-piece and equatorial segment of human spermatozoa (Baccetti et al, 1994) and has been shown to be an essential component of the neural receptor for HIV-1 gp120 (Bath et al, 1991; Harouse et al, 1991). Glycolipid molecules, most likely galactosyl-alkyle-glycerol which is structurally similar to galactosylceramides, has been detected on the surface of the mid-piece of spermatozoa and on the membrane of immature germ cells, preferentially in the spermatogonia. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that these sperm glycolipids are capable of binding to
gp120 (Brogi et al, 1995). Since the mid-piece of sperm contains mitochondria that are responsible for generating energy for sperm motility, it may be possible that HIV-1 infection results in disrupted mitochondrial function leading to sperm immotility. Such data suggest that glycolipids may function as HIV receptors and this may explain the inhibition of spermatogenesis observed in AIDS patients (Martin et al, 1991). However, whether galactosylceramide functions as a receptor for HIV infection of spermatozoa, has not been confirmed.

Semen appears to be an isolated reservoir of HIV-1. There is evidence that seminal HIV may not arise from the same reservoir as peripheral blood:

i) HIV-1 viraemia in semen does not always correlate with that in blood plasma (Rasheed et al, 1995; Liuzzi et al, 1996; Gupta et al, 1997; Coombs et al, 1998) or with blood CD4 cell count (Gupta et al, 1997; Liuzzi et al, 1996).

ii) Genetic analysis of envelope (Zhu et al, 1996; Delwart et al, 1998) and protease (Kiessling et al, 1998) genes of HIV-1 isolates from paired specimens of blood and semen have revealed significant divergences of the two viral populations.

iii) Genetic characteristics of envelope gene sequences of sexually transmitted virus differ from those in the blood of the transmitter (Zhu et al, 1996).

iv) Detection of culturable HIV-1 in semen correlated strongly with HIV RNA levels in cell-free seminal plasma but only weakly with HIV
RNA levels in blood plasma or with CD4 cell count (Liuzzi et al., 1996; Coombs et al., 1998).

The means by which virus may gain entry to semen is not yet understood. Possibilities include that virus arises from the site from which the seminal leukocytes originated (‘Hypothesis 1’), or alternatively that virus enters from another reservoir and infects seminal leukocytes within the seminal fluid (‘Hypothesis 2’). The origin of leukocytes in semen is not yet well defined but these cells may arise from within the germ cell compartment. This hypothesis is supported by the following observations:

i) Vasectomy reduces seminal leukocyte numbers (Olsen and Shields, 1984)

ii) Leukocyte numbers have a direct correlation with sperm with ideal morphology (Kiessling et al., 1995; Tomlinson et al., 1993). One proposed role of leukocytes in the germ cell compartment is to eliminate defective germ cells (Yeung et al., 1994).

Evidence against hypothesis 1 comes from the fact that the testis and epididymis (fig.1.7) are isolated from routine immune surveillance mechanisms by a combination of anatomic barriers (Holash et al., 1993) and Fas-FasL interactions (Griffith et al., 1995) thereby protecting spermatozoa which are highly immunogenic to their host. Vasectomy, which eliminates proximal sources of HIV from germ cells and leukocytes and secretions from the testes, epididymis and vas deferens, has minimal impact on the infectivity of semen (Krieger et al., 1998), suggesting that germ cells are not a source of
HIV. This study also suggests that cell-free and cell-associated HIV arises distal to the vas deferens (e.g. in seminal vesicles, prostate, urethra or Cowper’s gland). HIV has been detected in the pre-ejaculate which is produced by the urethral and Cowper’s gland (Ilaria et al, 1992). Granulocytes, macrophages and T lymphocytes (both CD4 and CD8) have been found in pre-ejaculate (Pudney et al, 1992). The immunosuppressive properties of seminal vesicle and prostate fluids supports the hypothesis that these organs may be sites of immune-privileged HIV-infected cells. Furthermore, CD4⁺ T cells are more abundant in the normal prostate compared with CD8⁺ T cells (Ball et al, 1982). Taken together it seems that virus may gain entry to semen from the peripheral circulation via accessory organs (eg. prostate and seminal vesicles). Variations in seminal viral burden may be influenced by prostatitis or urethritis, which in turn could increase leukocyte numbers in the semen-producing organs and consequently the semen viral burden. Infection of the accessory organs may also result in compromised immunologic control mechanisms in germ cell compartments (which is protected from HIV infection early in the disease) and hence may lead to HIV infection of CD4⁺ cells in germ cell compartments.

1.7.4. ‘Sperm-washing’

‘Sperm washing’ is a technique used to improve the quality of sperm before intra-uterine insemination or in vitro fertilisation. It has been used for the management of infertility resulting from cervical or male infertility factors
and was first employed in 1973 to remove sperm antibodies (Halim et al, 1973).

HIV is present in seminal fluid as both free-virus and non-sperm cell-associated virus as described above (I.5.3). Thus sperm washing may be used as a means of minimising the exposure of an uninfected female partner of an HIV\(^+\) male to potentially infected material, by reducing the free-virus and the HIV-infected cells. This application of 'sperm-washing' for HIV-discordant couples wishing to have children was first described in 1992 by Semprini et al (Semprini et al, 1992). To conceive, such HIV-discordant couples (the man is HIV positive and the woman is HIV negative) must abandon condom-protected intercourse and risk HIV transmission to the woman and to her child. 'Sperm-washing' as a risk reduction program has been a controversial area. It has been suggested that the risk of transmission is sufficiently low that such couples may attempt natural conception (Mandelbrot et al, 1997). 92 HIV negative women and their HIV positive partners received pre-conceptual counselling on the risk of transmission and were advised to pinpoint ovulation to reduce the risk. Two women seroconverted at seven months of pregnancy and another two post-partum, with seroconversions restricted to couples with inconsistent condom use. In contrast, Semprini's group have already carried out 1690 inseminations in 543 couples resulting in almost 240 pregnancies with no seroconversion in mothers or the resulting babies (Semprini et al, 1999, personal communication). Based on this clinical data, 'sperm-washing' appears to be a method of reducing the risk of
heterosexual transmission in HIV-discordant couples wishing to have children. However, the safety of sperm-washing has only been evaluated by the relatively insensitive method of antibody detection of viral antigen, p24, on the purified spermatozoa (Semprini et al, 1992). This thesis investigated, for the first time, the presence of both viral RNA and proviral DNA in the purified spermatozoa and the expression of receptors used for viral entry on these cells.

1.8. AIM OF THESIS

Understanding mechanisms of sexual transmission of HIV-1 is of importance in designing vaccine against HIV-1. Semen is considered to be an important vehicle in transmission of STDs including HIV-1 and immature DCs in the mucosa (LCs) are suggested to be the first cells to become infected. Therefore aim of this thesis is to investigate the role of semen in HIV transmission by answering following four questions:

i) Where does virus reside in seminal fluid?

ii) Does ‘sperm-washing’ really reduce risk of HIV transmission in HIV-discordant couples who wish to have children?

iii)What effect does seminal plasma have on DC phenotype and function?

iv) What effect does seminal plasma have on HIV infection of DCs?
II

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Suppliers for each reagent are listed in the section II.8 and suppliers for equipment are indicated where appropriate in the text.

II.1. SUBJECTS

Both semen and blood samples from HIV-1 positive patients were donated from HIV-1 positive men attending the St. Stephen’s Clinic, Chelsea and Westminster Hospital, London. Control semen samples were donated from HIV negative donors attending the fertility clinic at the Chelsea and Westminster Hospital and from laboratory workers. Control blood samples were obtained from laboratory workers. For propagation of virus (II.6.1) buffy coat from HIV negative individuals was obtained from the North London Blood Transfusion Centre, Colindale, London, UK. The number of samples for each study is indicated individually in appropriate figures. Ethical approval for the studies was granted by the Riverside Research Ethics Committee. All the samples from HIV-1 positive patients were prepared in a containment level 3 laboratory.
II.2. SAMPLE PREPARATION AND CELL CULTURES

II.2.1. Peripheral Blood Mononuclear Cell separation

Blood samples were collected intravenously into vacutainers containing ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA) or sodium heparin (Becton Dickinson, Oxford, UK). Plasma and peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) were separated by gradient centrifugation over Histopaque. The blood was overlaid on Histopaque and centrifuged at 600g for 30 minutes at room temperature. Plasma was stored at -70°C until use. The interface containing PBMCs was transferred into a fresh universal tube and washed twice in wash medium [serum-free RPMI1640 medium supplemented with 2mM L-glutamine, 50U/ml of penicillin, 50µg/ml of streptomycin and 1.5µg/ml of amphotericine B] by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at room temperature. The viable cells were counted by 'trypan blue exclusion'.

II.2.2. Semen Separation

Semen samples were donated by masturbation into a sterile plastic container. The samples were kept at 37°C until processing and all specimens were processed within 2 hours of donation. Unfractionated semen samples were diluted 1:4 in pre-warmed (37°C) complete Earl’s Balanced Salt (EBS) medium [EBS solution supplemented with 1mM pyruvic acid and 1mM lactic
acid and pH adjusted to 7.2 using concentrated HCl]. A fraction of the diluted whole semen was stored at -70°C. Seminal plasma, spermatozoa and seminal non-sperm cells (NSCs) were prepared by differential gradient centrifugation over 80% and 40% Medicol Medium Isotonic (MMI) at 400g for 30 minutes at room temperature. The semen sample was separated into 4 fractions: seminal plasma, upper interface containing NSCs, lower interface containing dead or less motile spermatozoa and the pellet containing mainly live and motile spermatozoa (fig.II.1). The cells from both interfaces and the pellet were washed twice in complete EBS medium by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at room temperature. Following the final wash the spermatozoal pellet was overlaid with 3ml of medium and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 20 minutes to allow motile spermatozoa cells to swim up. The supernatant containing motile spermatozoa was collected. In some experiments, the spermatozoa fraction at the 40%/80% interface was also collected. This fraction should contain mostly dead spermatozoa, however when treated in the same way as the pellet from the gradient a number of viable ‘swim-up’ spermatozoa were recovered. The seminal plasma fraction was filtered through a 0.2µm filter (Sartorius, Surrey, UK) and stored at -70°C. Seminal plasma samples from six HIV-negative individuals were mixed together to make a pool of seminal plasma and stored at -70°C. This ‘seminal plasma pool’ was used to pulse monocyte-derived dendritic cells (MDDCs) as described in II.2.6 for studies presented in chapter 4 and chapter 5. For some experiments, lipids from seminal plasma (HIV-negative) were extracted at low pH using reverse
Fig. II.1. Semen separation by differential gradient centrifugation over 80% and 40% Mediol Medium Isotonic (MMI).

- Seminal plasma
- NSC fraction
- Spermatozoa (dead/less motile)
- Live spermatozoa
- Wash pellet containing live spermatozoa

Centrifugation

Seminal fluid
40% MMI
80% MMI

Incorporate at 37°C, 5% CO₂ ('swim-up')

Motile spermatozoa
phase columns as previously described (Kelly et al, 1997). Seminal plasma was adjusted to pH4 using concentrated HCl prior to passing through C-18 reverse phase columns (SepPak, Waters, UK) which were pre-treated with methanol and washed with distilled water. The lipid-extracted seminal plasma was filtered through a 0.2μm filter.

II.2.3. Freezing and Thawing Cells

Cells for DNA and RNA extraction were snap frozen at -70°C. Cells for culture were re-suspended in 0.5ml of freezing mix [90% FCS and 10% Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO)] at a concentration of 5x10⁶/ml and were frozen in an isopropanol-insulated chamber (‘Mr. Frosty’) placed at -70°C, over night. The next day, the cells were transferred to and stored in liquid nitrogen. Frozen vials were thawed quickly in a 37°C water-bath and immediately diluted with cold R10 medium [serum free RPMI1640 supplemented with 2mM L-glutamine, 50U/ml of penicillin, 50μg/ml of streptomycin, 1.5μg/ml of amphotericine B and 10% FCS]. The cells were washed twice at 400g for 7 minutes at room temperature, resuspended in R10 medium and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂.
II.2.4. Separation of CD14^ Cells Using MicroBeads

CD14^ cells were positively selected from PBMCs using CD14 MicroBeads according to the manufacturer's instructions. Briefly, PBMCs were washed in cold MiniMACS buffer [0.2mM EDTA, 0.5% FCS in PBS]. 10^7 cells in 80μl of MiniMACS buffer were incubated with 20μl of CD14 MicroBeads at 6-12°C for 15 minutes with occasional mixing. The cells were washed once by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at 6°C and then resuspended in 1ml of cold MiniMACS buffer. The cell suspension was applied to a pre-wet MS+ column (Miltenyi Biotec) which was placed in the magnetic field of a MACS separator (Miltenyi Biotec). The magnetically labelled CD14^ cells were retained in the column while the unlabelled CD14^ cells ran through. The CD14^ cells were washed off from the column twice with 500μl of MiniMACS buffer. After removal of the column from the magnetic field, the magnetically retained CD14^ cells were eluted as for the positively selected cell fraction.

II.2.5. Generation of Dendritic Cells from CD14^ Monocytes

3ml of CD14^ cells at a concentration of 10^6/ml in dendritic cell (DC) culture medium [R10 medium supplemented with 50ng/ml of GM-CSF and 20ng/ml of rIL-4] were placed in a 6-well tissue culture plate (Greiner, Gloucestershire, UK) and cultured at 37°C, 5% CO_2 for 5 days. 50ng/ml GM-CSF and 20ng/ml rIL-4 were added every 3 days and cultured for 5 days to obtain CD14^
monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs). Phenotype of MDDCs after 5 days of culture is shown in fig.II.2.

II.2.6. Pulsing of dendritic cells with Seminal Plasma, PGE2 or 19-OH PGE2 and/or TNF-α

Seminal plasma (at a final concentration of 0.1% and 1%; a pool of seminal plasma as described in II.2.2 was used), prostaglandin E2 [PGE2 (at a final concentration of 0.0071μM, 0.071μM and 0.71μM)] or 19-hydroxy PGE2 [19-OH PGE2 (at a final concentration of 0.0353μM, 0.353μM and 3.53μM)] was added to MDDC cultures at day 5 and incubated overnight at 37°C, 5% CO₂. In some experiments, cells were pulsed overnight with 200U/ml of TNF-α alone or together with seminal plasma, PGE2, or 19-OH PGE2. The next day, the cells were washed twice in R10 medium by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at room temperature before setting up further experiments. The optimum concentration of TNF-α (200U/ml) was determined experimentally and the data is shown in chapter 4. The amounts of PGE2, 19-OH PGE2 used were calculated as follows.

a) PGE2 (Calbiochem)

Molecular weight of PGE2 = 352.5

PGE2 in dry pellet (1mg) was dissolved in 1ml of ethanol to give concentration of 2.84mM (concentration of PGE2 stock).
Fig. II.2. Flow cytometric analysis showing the CD14+ monocyte population after CD14+ cell separation using MicroBeads and the CD1a+ immature DC population after 5 days of culture in the presence of IL-4 and GM-CSF.

CD14+ monocytes were separated from PBMCs using MicroBeads as described in II.2.4 (a). The purified cells were stained with monoclonal anti-CD14 antibody (c) and were cultured for 5 days in the presence of IL-4 and GM-CSF (b). At day 5 the cells were stained with monoclonal anti-CD1a antibody (d).
Average concentration of PGE2 in seminal plasma is 25μg/ml (Kelly et al, 1997) which is equivalent to 71μM (i.e. $\frac{25}{352500} \approx 7.1 \times 10^{-5}$M or 71μM).

Therefore, 0.1% seminal plasma contains 0.071μM and 1% seminal plasma 0.71μM of PGE2. The volume of PGE2 stock to be added to MDDC cultures to give a final concentration equivalent to 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma was calculated using following equation:

Volume of PGE2 stock to add = $\frac{A}{2840} \times 0.071$ [(for 0.1% seminal plasma) or

0.71 (for 1% seminal plasma)]

(where A is final volume of MDDC culture)

(b) 19-OH PGE2 (Cayman)

Molecular weight of 19-OH PGE2 = 368.5

Concentration of 19-OH PGE2 solution was 500μg/ml which is equivalent to 1.36mM.

Average concentration of 19-OH PGE2 in seminal plasma is 130μg/ml (Kelly et al, 1997) which is equivalent to 353μM.

[i.e. $\frac{130}{368500} \approx 3.53 \times 10^{-4}$M or 353μM]

Therefore, 0.1% seminal plasma contains 0.353μM of 19-OH PGE2 and 1% seminal plasma contains 3.53μM of 19-OH PGE2. The volume of 19-OH PGE2 stock to be added to MDDC cultures to give a final concentration which is equivalent to 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma was calculated using following equation:
Volume of PGE2 stock to add = \(\frac{A}{1360}\) x 0.353 [(for 0.1% seminal plasma) or 3.53 (for 1% seminal plasma)]

(where A is final volume of MDDC culture)

**II.2.7. Allogeneic Mixed Lymphocyte Reaction**

MDDCs treated with seminal plasma as described in II.2.6 were used as stimulators in an allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reaction (MLR). Fresh PBMCs were used as responder cells. An increasing number of irradiated (3,000 rads for 9 minutes) MDDCs (0 to 8,000 cells/well) and \(10^5\) responder cells were added to a 96-well U-bottomed tissue culture plate (Greiner) in R10 medium. After 4 days, the cells were pulsed with \(^{3}\text{H}\)-thymidine and harvested on a filtermat (Wallac) the next day (16-hour pulse with 0.5\(\mu\text{Ci/well}\)). Proliferation was measured as \(^{3}\text{H}\)-thymidine incorporation. Results are shown as mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard error (SE) throughout this thesis in order to overcome difficulties in summarising results from different samples due to a large variance in mean counts per minute (CPM) readings between samples. Representative graphs of each experiment are also presented as a mean CPM with SE. The number of experiments performed was stated individually in appropriate figures presented throughout this thesis and each experiment was set up in triplicate.
II.2.8. Recovery of allogeneic T cell proliferation

The MDDCs were pulsed with seminal plasma overnight as described in II.2.6. The cells were washed twice, irradiated and used to set up allogeneic MLRs (4x10⁴ MDDCs in 0.5ml + 10⁶ responder cells in 0.5ml of R10 medium) in a 24-well tissue culture plate (Greiner). At day 3, the cells were harvested, washed twice, counted ('trypan blue exclusion') and then employed as responders in a second MLR. Untreated fresh MDDCs from the same donor as those in the first MLR were used as stimulators. The second MLR was set up in a 96-well tissue culture plate as follow: i) untreated MDDCs only, ii) 20 units of rIL-2 alone or iii) both MDDCs and rIL-2. In all conditions described 10⁵ cells from the primary MLR were added. At day 6, the cells were pulsed with 0.5µCi/well of [³H]-thymidine and harvested next day. The results were shown as mean SI with SE. This experiment was performed three times and each experiment was set up in triplicate.

II.3. FLOW CYTOMETRY

II.3.1. Surface Marker Staining

Cells were washed once with MiniMACS buffer by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at 6°C. 1-10x10⁴ cells in 100µl of MiniMACS buffer were
incubated with appropriate antibodies [1μg/10⁶ cells (table II.1)] on ice for 30 minutes in dark. Unbound antibodies were washed off by centrifugation at 400g for 10 minutes at 6°C. Stained cells were re-suspended and fixed in 500μl of FACS Fix [1% (or 2% for samples from HIV positive patients) paraformaldehyde in MiniMACS buffer]. When indirect immunofluorescence or multiple colour staining was required the subsequent antibody was added to the cells after washing off unbound first or second layer of antibodies. The cells were then analysed within 24 hours on a Becton Dickinson FACScalibur using Cellquest software.

II.3.2. Intracellular Cytokine Staining

Cells to be stained for intracellular cytokines were incubated with 10μg/ml of Brefeldin A (BFA) overnight. Cells without BFA as control were also set up. When required, 1μg/ml of Ionomycin and 25ng/ml of Phorbol 12-Myristate 13-Acetate (PMA) were added to stimulate cytokine production to the culture in conjunction with BFA. Following all surface staining as described in II.3.1, the cells were permeabilised using FACS Permeabilising Solution. The FACS Permeabilising Solution (10x) was diluted in distilled water to make a working concentration (1x). 500μl of the diluted FACS Permeabilising Solution was added to the cell pellet, vortexed and incubated for 10 minutes at room temperature in the dark. The permeabilised cells were washed in MiniMax buffer containing 0.1% Sodium Azide (NaN₃) prior to staining with specific antibodies for cytokines. Intracellular cytokine staining procedures were
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Clone</th>
<th>Isotype</th>
<th>Fluorescence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CD1a (Harlan Sera-Lab)</td>
<td>NA1/34HLK</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2a</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Serotec)</td>
<td>NA1/34</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2a</td>
<td>Pure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD3 (Sigma)</td>
<td>UCHT-1</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>FITC/Q-red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4 (Sigma)</td>
<td>Q4120</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>PE/Q-red</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Dako)</td>
<td>MT310</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD8 (Sigma)</td>
<td>UCHT-4</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2a</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD14 (Sigma)</td>
<td>UCHM-1</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2a</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD80 (Pharminen)</td>
<td>BB1</td>
<td>Mouse IgM</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD86 (Pharminen)</td>
<td>2331 (FUN-1)</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA-DR (Serotec)</td>
<td>TAL.1B5</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>RPE-Cy5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Serotec)</td>
<td>TU36</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2b</td>
<td>RPE-Cy5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Harlan Sera-Lab)</td>
<td>B-F1</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA-DQ (Sigma)</td>
<td>HK19</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2b</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCR5 (R&amp;D)</td>
<td>45502.111</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2b</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CXCR4 (NIBSC)</td>
<td>44708.111</td>
<td>Mouse IgG2a</td>
<td>Pure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptavidin (DAKO)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm (Chemicon)</td>
<td>Polyclonal</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Pure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sheep-IgG (Sigma)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFN-γ (Pharminen)</td>
<td>45.B3</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-4 (Pharminen)</td>
<td>MP4-25D2</td>
<td>Rat IgG1</td>
<td>FITC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-10 (Pharminen)</td>
<td>JES3-9D7</td>
<td>Rat IgG1</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-12 (Pharminen)</td>
<td>C11.5</td>
<td>Mouse IgG1</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FITC = fluorescein-isothiocyanate, PE = R-Phycoerythrin, Q-red = Quantum red, RPE-Cy5 = R-Phycoerythrin cychrome 5
carried out at room temperature. Stained cells were analysed within 24 hours of staining on a flow cytometer (Becton Dickinson FACScalibur using Cellquest software).

II.4. **NUCLEIC ACID EXTRACTION**

**II.4.1. Tri Reagent™**

Following the manufacturer’s instructions, $10^6$ cells were homogenised in 1ml of Tri Reagent™ (a mixture of guanidine thiocyanate and phenol in a monophase solution) and the mix was frozen at -70°C immediately, and thawed slowly on ice. 0.2ml of chloroform was added to the sample. The resulting sample was shaken vigorously and was allowed to stand for 5 minutes on ice followed by centrifugation at 12,000g for 10 minutes at 4°C. This resulted in separation of the mixture into 3 phases: a red organic phase containing protein, an interface containing DNA, and a colourless upper aqueous phase containing RNA.

**II.4.1.1. RNA Isolation**

The aqueous phase containing RNA was transferred to a 1.5ml-ependorf tube (Elkay, Hampshire, UK). 0.5ml of isopropanol was added to the sample and
mixed. The resulting mixture was left to stand for 5 minutes at 4°C and was centrifuged at 12,000g for 10 minutes at 4°C. The RNA pellet was washed with 1ml of 75% ethanol; the sample was mixed well and centrifuged at 2,000g for 5 minutes at 4°C. The washed RNA pellet was air-dried and re-suspended in 30µl of nuclease-free water and stored at -70°C. The concentration of RNA was measured using a spectrophotometer (II.4.4). RNA was prepared in a cold room.

II.4.1.2. DNA Isolation

The interface containing DNA was transferred to a 1.5ml-epppendorf tube. 0.3ml of absolute ethanol was added to the sample and mixed. The resulting mixture was left to stand for 3 minutes at 4°C and then centrifuged at 2,000g for 5 minutes at 4°C. The DNA pellet was washed twice in Wash Solution [0.1M sodium citrate, 10% ethanol]. During each wash, the DNA pellet was allowed to stand for 30 minutes at 4°C with occasional mixing. After the final wash, the DNA pellet was re-suspended in 1.5ml of 75% ethanol and was left to stand for 15 minutes at 4°C followed by centrifugation at 2,000g for 5 minutes at 4°C. The washed DNA pellet was air-dried and resuspended in 100µl of nuclease-free water. If the DNA pellet was difficult to resuspend a larger volume of water was added or the DNA suspension was heated to 80°C until complete resuspension was achieved. The concentration of DNA was
measured using a spectrophotometer (II.4.4) and 1µg/µl DNA stock was prepared and stored at -20°C until use.

II.4.2. RNAzol™ B

Following manufacturer's instructions, 5-10x10^5 cells were homogenised in 0.2ml of RNAzol™ B. Chloroform (one tenth volume of the homogenate) was added to the lysed cell suspension. The mixture was shaken vigorously for 15 seconds and allowed to stand for 5 minutes at 4°C followed by centrifugation at 12,000g for 15 minutes at 4°C. This resulted in the separation of the mixture into 2 phases: a lower blue phenol:chloroform phase and a colourless aqueous phase containing RNA in 50% of the initial volume of RNAzol™ B. This aqueous phase was transferred to a 1.5ml-eppendorf tube. An equal volume of isopropanol was added to the tube and mixed. This mixture was incubated at 4°C for 15 minutes followed by centrifugation of the mixture at 12,000g for 15 minutes at 4°C. The RNA pellet was washed once with 1ml of 75% ethanol. The washed RNA pellet was air-dried, re-suspended in 30µl of nuclease-free water and stored at -70°C. The concentration of RNA was measured using a spectrophotometer (II.4.4).
II.4.3. NucliSens™ Lysis Buffer

All the reagents used in this part of the experiment were supplied by Organon Teknika and were used as per the manufacturer's instructions. 100μl of blood plasma; 100μl of seminal plasma (1:4 diluted); 100μl of unfractionated semen (1:4 diluted); 10^5-10^6 spermatozoa, or 10^5-10^6 NSCs were used to extract nucleic acid. The samples were added to 0.9ml of the lysis buffer provided (Tris/HCl, Triton X-100, 5M guanidine thiocyanate: GuSCN) and centrifuged for 30 seconds at 10,000g. 20μl of calibrator provided was added to the mixture which was then vortexed and centrifuged at 10,000g for 30 seconds. After mixing the silica suspension well, 50μl of the silica suspension was added to the sample mix. The resulting mixture was left to stand for 10 minutes at room temperature (with vortexing every 2 minutes) to allow the nucleic acids to be captured on the silica, and was then centrifuged at 10,000g for 30 seconds to pellet the nucleic acid bound silica. The silica-nucleic acid pellet was washed twice with 1ml of the wash buffer (Tris/HCl, 5M GuSCN) to remove DNase and RNase. The silica-nucleic acid pellet was then washed twice with 1ml of 70% ethanol to remove GuSCN and to precipitate nucleic acids. Finally 1ml of acetone was added. Following the acetone wash, the silica pellet was dried at 56°C for 10 minutes using a dry heating block (since acetone interferes with PCR reactions it is necessary to dry the pellet well). 50μl of the elution buffer (Tris/HCl) was added to the dried silica pellet, the resulting suspension was mixed well by vortexing and was left at 56°C for 10
minutes with occasional mixing to allow the silica bound nucleic acids to be released. Finally the nucleic acid was pelleted by centrifugation at 10,000g for 2 minutes at room temperature.

II.4.4. Spectrophotometer

The quantity of nucleic acid extracted was measured using a spectrophotometer. The RNA or DNA was diluted 1 in 100 using nuclease-free water and transferred to a cuvette which was placed in a spectrophotometer. The spectrophotometer was calibrated based on a 'blank' (i.e. 1ml of nuclease-free water only). The optical density of the DNA and RNA was read at 260nm and 280nm. Calculation of nucleic acid purity was based on the ratio of OD$_{260}$ to OD$_{280}$: if the ratio of OD$_{260}$ to OD$_{280}$ is above 1.5 for DNA and above 1.8 for RNA the nucleic acid prepared is regarded as pure.

Calculation of quantity of nucleic acid (µg/µl):

$$\frac{OD_{260} \times \text{Constant} \times \text{Dilution factor}}{1000}$$

(Constant =50 for DNA and 44 for RNA)
II.5. MOLECULAR ANALYSIS OF THE CELLS

II.5.1. Reverse Transcription-Polymerase Chain Reaction for CD4

The reverse transcription (RT) reaction mix [PCR buffer II, 4mM dNTP, 5mM MgCl₂, 2.5mM Oligo d(T)₁₆] was prepared on ice. 0.3μg of RNA template was added per 20μl RT reaction mix. This was heated to 80°C in a thermocycler (Perkin-Elmer; Techne) for 5 minutes to denature the dsRNA, cooled to 4°C and then placed on ice before adding MuLV reverse transcriptase (50 units/20μl RT reaction mix) and 20 units of RNase inhibitor. The complete RT reaction mix was returned to the thermocycler immediately and reverse transcription was performed as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
42°C & \quad 60 \text{ minutes (reverse transcription)} \\
99°C & \quad 5 \text{ minutes (inactivation of the reverse transcriptase and denaturation of RNA-cDNA duplex)} \\
& \quad \text{Cool down to } 4°C
\end{align*}
\]

The cDNA synthesised was kept at -20°C until use. PCR was performed with 2μl of the cDNA template per reaction as described in II.5.2.

II.5.2. Polymerase Chain Reaction for viral (HIV-1) DNA detection

The PCR mix [PCR buffer II for Ampli-Taq Gold DNA polymerase, or Stoffel buffer for Ampli-Taq DNA polymerase, Stoffel fragment, 1mM dNTP,
3.75mM MgCl₂, 1µM primer, and 2 units of Ampli-Taq Gold DNA polymerase or Ampli-Taq DNA polymerase, Stoffel fragment] was prepared on ice in a DNA-free clean room. 0.2µg of the DNA template for DNA PCR or 2µl of cDNA from reverse transcription (II.5.1) was added per 20µl reaction mix. Nested PCR was performed for HIV proviral DNA detection and β-globin primers were used as positive controls. For nested PCR 0.5µl of the first round PCR product was used as template. β-actin primers were used as a positive control primer for RT-PCR for CD4. The PCR reaction mix was heated to 95°C for 5 minutes to denature dsDNA (pre-PCR), cooled to 4°C and then transferred onto ice to add the enzyme, Taq DNA polymerase. The complete reaction mix was returned to the PCR thermocycler immediately and PCR was performed as follows:

95°C 12 minutes for Ampli-Taq Gold DNA polymerase

5 minutes for Ampli-Taq DNA polymerase

(pre-PCR denaturation/activation of Ampli-Taq Gold DNA polymerase)

95°C 1 minute (denaturation) 40 cycles

Annealing for 1 minute*

72°C 1 minute (extension)

72°C 10 minutes (extension)

Cool down to 4°C
Annealing temperature for 1st round proviral DNA detection was 50°C and for nested reaction was 45°C. The annealing temperature for CD4 cDNA amplification was 56°C.

Primers for β-globin and HIV-1 env were quoted from Simmonds et al (1990) and synthesized by Perkin-Elmer. Primers for β-actin and CD4 were designed by Dr. M. Hope and synthesized by Gibco-BRL.

Table II.2. Primers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Primer sequence (5'-----3')</th>
<th>Product size (bp)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>β-globin (1st round)</td>
<td>5' GGTTGGCCAATCTACTCCCAGG 3'</td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' GCTCACTCAGTGTGGCAAAG 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-globin (Nested)</td>
<td>5' ACACAACTGTGTTCACTAGC 3'</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' CAACTTCATCCACGTCACC 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV-1 env (1st round)</td>
<td>5' TCAGGAAGGGGACCAGAAT 3'</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' GATCCCATAGTGCTTCTGCTGCT 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV-1 env (Nested)</td>
<td>5' GGGGAATTTTTTTCTACTGTAAT 3'</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' CTCTCCATTTGTCCTCATA 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β-actin</td>
<td>5' GGGTCAGAAGGATCTCTATGTGG 3'</td>
<td>465</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' GTGCGCAATTCAGGGTACATGG 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4</td>
<td>5' ATAAAGATTCTGGGAATTCAGGGCTCC 3'</td>
<td>751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5' TGCAACITTCTGTTCCTGCTCAAGG 3'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II.5.3. Quantitation of HIV-1 RNA Load Using NucliSens™

Nucleic acid was extracted as described in II.4.3 and used for quantitation of HIV-1 RNA load using the following procedure.

II.5.3.1. Amplification

All the reagents used in this part of the experiment were supplied by Organon Teknika and were used as per the manufacturer’s instructions. 5μl of nucleic acid suspension was mixed with 10μl of primer mix provided and was left to stand at 65°C for 5 minutes to denature the nucleic acids and then placed at 41°C for 5 minutes to anneal the primers. 5μl of the enzyme mix (Avian myeloblastosis virus reverse transcriptase, Phage T7 RNA polymerase, and *E. coli* RNase H) was added to the nucleic acids/primers mix. The resulting mixture was gently mixed by rotating the tube and incubated at 41°C for 5 minutes for dsDNA template synthesis. The amplification mixture was centrifuged at 10,000g for 30 seconds and was incubated at 42°C for further 90 minutes to generate ssRNA product.

II.5.3.2. Detection

All the reagents used in this part of the experiment were supplied by Organon Teknika and were used as per the manufacturer’s instructions. 5μl of the
amplificate and an appropriate amount of the detection buffer to give a dilution of 1 in 21 were mixed well. 5µl of the diluted amplificate was added to each tube containing 20µl of four oligo-beads/detection probe mix. The resulting amplificate/probe-bead mix was incubated at 41°C for 30 minutes to allow hybridisation of probe-bead with diluted amplificate. The hybridised RNA with probe-bead was detected by an electrochemical luminescence technique using an automated detection machine and HIV-1 RNA QT software.

II.5.4. Gel Electrophoresis

5µl of loading buffer [20% glycerol, 0.25% bromophenol blue, 0.1M EDTA in distilled water] was added to the 20µl of the PCR product and 10µl of the mixture was loaded to each well of a gel. The agarose gel which was prepared in Tris-Borate EDTA (TBE) buffer was placed in TBE buffer and run at 70V, 100mA for 30-40 minutes. Total RNA, genomic DNA, RT-PCR products, and PCR products were visualised on a 1% or 1.5% agarose gel in the presence of ethidium bromide under a transilluminator.
II.6. *In vitro* infection of dendritic cells with HIV-1

II.6.1. Propagation of Virus

PBMCs from the buffy coat (North London Blood Transfusion Centre) were separated as described in II.2.1. The cells were stimulated with 10U/ml of rIL-2 and 10μg/ml of phytohaemagglutinin (PHA) in R15 medium [serum free RPMI1640, supplemented with 2mM L-glutamine, 50U/ml of penicillin, 50μg/ml of streptomycin, 1.5μg/ml of amphotericine B and 10%, 15% FCS] for 3 days. The PHA blasts from the two different donors were mixed and resuspended in R15 media at a concentration of 2x10^6/ml. Viral stock (table II.2; kind gift from Prof. J. Weber and Dr S. Beddows, St. Mary’s Hospital, London, UK) were added (>125 ID₅₀) to the PHA blasts and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 2 hours. 3ml of R15 medium with 10U/ml of rIL-2 was then added to the culture and incubated overnight at 37°C, 5% CO₂. 10⁷ of 3 day-old PHA blasts in 5 ml of R15 media containing rIL-2 were added to the culture. To maintain the viral cultures, half the volume of medium was replaced twice per week and fresh medium containing 3x10⁶ PHA blasts were added once a week. The virus in the supernatant was harvested by centrifugation at 400g and 0.2μm filtered. Aliquots of the viral stock were kept at -70°C for viral quantification (II.6.2) and for *in vitro* infection study. All the procedures were performed in class II hoods in containment level III facility. Concentrations of propagated virus were measured by p24 protein ELISA (II.6.2) and results are shown in fig.II.3. The p24 protein concentration was evaluated using ‘Growth
Fig.II.3. Virus propagation: measurement of p24 protein production by ELISA

Virus was grown in PHA/IL-2-stimulated HIV-negative PBMCs (II.6.1). Virus in supernatants were harvested at different time points indicated and optical density (OD) at 405nm was read. Concentrations of p24 protein in each virus stock were evaluated from the standard curve (fig.II.3a) and are shown in fig.II.3b.
Function' (Excel 97) which allows predicted exponential growth by using existing data (i.e. standard curve that were plotted from the ELISA readings of known p24 protein concentration). The detection limit was 0.0316ng/ml. The highest concentration of p24 protein was obtained between 7 and 14 days of culture. For *in vitro*-infection studies the viral stocks were used at a final p24 protein concentration of 0.1ng/ml.

Table II.3. Viral isolates used to infect DCs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Viral isolates</th>
<th>Properties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JRCSF</td>
<td>M-tropic or R5 strain, laboratory adapted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106</td>
<td>Dual-tropic or R5/X4 strain, primary isolate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5</td>
<td>T-tropic or X4 strain, primary isolate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II.6.2. p24 Enzyme Linked Immunosorbent Assay (ELISA)

The protocol was developed by Dr S. Beddows, St. Mary’s Hospital, London, UK. The anti-p24 antibody (D7320) was diluted 1:100 in Coating Buffer (100mM NaHCO₃, pH adjusted to 8.5 using NaOH). 100μl of the diluted antibody was added to each well of a 96 well microtitre ELISA plate, covered and incubated overnight at room temperature. The plate was washed three times with 1x TBS [0.144M NaCl, 0.05% Tween 20, 25mM Tris, pH adjusted to 7.5 using concentrated HCl]. 200μl of Blocking Buffer [3% milk powder in 1x TBS] was added to each well and incubated at room temperature for 30
minutes and washed three times with 1x TBS. The samples to be assessed for p24 production were pre-treated with 0.1-0.2% Empigen (detergent) for 30 minutes at 56°C in a water-bath to inactivate HIV without destroying the antigenic epitopes. 100μl of the empigen-inactivated samples were added to each well, covered and incubated overnight at room temperature. The wells were washed six times with 1x TBS next day. The biotinylated anti-p24 antibody was diluted 1:100 in TMT/SS [2% milk powder, 20% lamb serum, 0.5% Tween 20 in 1x TBS]. 100μl of the diluted biotin-conjugated anti-p24 antibody was added to each well and incubated at room temperature for 2 hours. The plate was washed six times with 1x TBS. The streptavidin-AP was diluted to give 2 units/ml. 100μl of the diluted streptavidin-AP was added to each well, incubated at room temperature for 1 hour and washed again six times with 1x TBS. 0.1mg of the substrate (pNPP phosphatase substrate) in 100μl of Reaction Buffer [10mM Ethanolamine, 0.5mM MgCl₂, pH adjusted to 9.8 using concentrated HCl] was added to each well and incubated at room temperature in the dark until the optical density (OD) of the 100ng/ml control was more than 1.0. A p24 antigen control stock [(kind gift from Prof. J. Weber and Dr. S. Beddows, St. Mary's Hospital, London, UK) (1mg/ml)] was titrated in PBS/E/S (0.1% Empigen, 10% lamb serum in PBS) to give a standard curve (ie. 100ng/ml, 31.6ng/ml, 10ng/ml, 3.16ng/ml, 1ng/ml, 0.316ng/ml, 0.1ng/ml and 0.0316ng/ml) and PBS/E/S was used as a negative control. The plate was read at an OD of 405nm. Concentrations of p24 protein were evaluated from the standard curves which are obtained from OD readings of the p24 antigen
controls ('standard control'). The p24 antigen control ELISA was set up in duplicate and the standard curves were obtained from the mean OD readings of duplicate.

II.6.3. In Vitro Infection of Dendritic Cells with HIV-1

Virus was treated with DNase (ie. 50 units of RQ1 RNase-free DNase). The DNase was added to 1ml of virus suspension, mixed well and incubated at 37°C for 15 minutes on a dry-hot block (Techne). 100µl of the DNase treated viral supernatant was added to 1ml of the 5 day-old MDDC culture (10⁶/ml; II.2.5) to give a final p24 protein concentration of 0.1ng/ml and incubated overnight at 37°C, 5% CO₂. 100µl of the DNase treated viral suspension was kept to check for presence of HIV proviral DNA. The cells were washed three times, resuspended in MDDC culture medium and incubated for a further 5 days. The supernatant from the culture was collected and kept at -70°C for p24 ELISA and the cells were harvested for molecular analysis.

II.7. Statistical Analysis

Statistical analyses of allogeneic MLR and flow cytometry data were performed using SPSS 10.0 software. Statistical method employed was the 'independent-sample T test' to comparing two groups (e.g. control vs. 0.1%
semenal plasma-pulsed MDDCs, control vs. HIV-1 infected MDDCs). The equality of variance was assessed by 'Levene's test'. If the P values were less than 0.05 (i.e. 95% confidence) the results were regarded as significant. Data from allogeneic MLRs are presented in the form of stimulation indices (SI) with standard errors (SE) unless stated, which were evaluated using following equation:

$$SI = \frac{CPM_1}{CPM_2}$$  \hspace{1cm} (1)

P values comparing the general trend curves presented in allogenic MLR data were determined based on the slope of each curve which was calculated using a Excel 97 software. General trend curves showing statistical significance are only presented in the appropriate figures. Data from flow cytometric analyses were presented in the form of mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) with standard errors and in the form of percentages of positive cells with standard errors. The MFI of each marker was determined by subtracting MFI of isotype matched control antibodies from the MFI of specific antibodies. The percentages of positive cells were determined by comparison with cells incubated with isotype matched control antibodies. Positive markers were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker. The degree of increase or decrease in levels of expression (or % positive cells) was calculated using following equation:

$$\Delta \text{MFI (or \% positive cells)} \times 100$$  \hspace{1cm} (2)
MFI₁ (or % positive cells)

(Where ΔMFI (or % positive cells) is difference in mean fluorescence intensities (or % positive cells) between control and treated MDDCs; MFI₁ (or % positive cells) is MFI (or % positive cells) of control MDDCs.

II.8. REAGENTS AND SUPPLIERS

Acetone Merck
Agarose Sigma
Antibodies Refer Table II.1.
Anti-p24 antibody (D7320) NIBSC
Biotinylated anti-p24 antibody NIBSC
Brefeldin A (BFA) Sigma
Bromophenol blue Sigma
C-18 reverse phase column SepPak, Waters
CD14 MicroBeads Milltenyi Biotec
Chloroform Sigma
Diemethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) Sigma
DNA ladder marker Gibco-BRL
Earls balanced salt (EBS) medium Sigma
Empigen Calbiochem
Ethanol Merck
Ethanolamine Sigma
Ethidium bromide Sigma
Ethylenediamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA) Sigma
FACS permeabilising solution Becton Dickinson
Foetal calf serum (FCS) Sigma
Glycerol Sigma
GM-CSF (Lucomax 1.11x10^7 units/mg) Norvatis
[^H]-thymidine Amersham Pharmacia Biotec
Histopaque Sigma
Ionomycin Sigma
Isopropanol Sigma
Lactic acid Sigma
Lamb serum Gibco-BRL
Magnesium Chloride (MgCl2) Sigma
Medicol Medium Isotonic Medi-Cult
Nuclease-free water Biogenesis
NucliSens HIV-1 RNA assay kit Organon Teknika
Oligo d(T)16 Perkin Elmer
P24 antibody (D7320) NIBSC
PCR reagents Perkin Elmer
(Buffer, MgCl2, dNTP, Ampli-Taq DNA polymerase)
pNPP phosphatase substrate Sigma
Phosphate buffered saline (PBS) Sigma
Phorbol 12-Myristate 13-Acetate (PMA)  Sigma
Phytohaemaglutinin (PHA)  Sigma
Primers  Perkin Elmer/Gibco-BRL
Pyruvic acid  Sigma
Recombinant IL-2 (rIL-2)  Sigma
Recombinant IL-4 (rIL-4)  Sigma
Prostaglandin E  Calbiochem
19-OH prostaglandin E2  Cayman
Reverse transcriptase (MuLV)  Perkin Elmer
RNazol™ B  Biogenesis
RNase inhibitor  Perkin Elmer
RPMI 1640 medium  Sigma
RQ1-RNase-free DNase  Promega
Sodium Azide (NaN₃)  Sigma
Sodium bicarbonate (NaHCO₃)  Sigma
Sodium chloride (NaCl)  Sigma
Sodium citrate  Sigma
Streptavidin-AP  Boehringer Mannheim
TNF-α  Sigma
Tri reagent™  Sigma
Tri-Borate EDTA (TBE)  Sigma
Trizma  Sigma
Trypan blue  Sigma
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tween 20</th>
<th>Sigma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supplier addresses:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amesham Pharmacia Boitech</td>
<td>Cambridge, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Becton Dickinson</td>
<td>Oxford, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biogenesis</td>
<td>Poole, Dorset, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boehringer Mannheim</td>
<td>Lewes, East Sussex, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cayman</td>
<td>Alexis Corporation-Europe, Bingham, Nottingham, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calbiochem</td>
<td>CN Biosciences (UK) Ltd, Beeston, Nottingham, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gibco-BRL, Life Technology</td>
<td>Paisley, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medi-Cult</td>
<td>Surrey, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merck</td>
<td>Luttrworth, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milltenyi Biotec</td>
<td>Bisley, Surrey, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIBSC</td>
<td>Potters Bar, Hertfordshire, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Novartis</td>
<td>Farnborough, Hampshire, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organon Teknika</td>
<td>Cambridge, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perkin Elmer</td>
<td>Warrington, Cheshire, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promega</td>
<td>Southampton, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SepPak, Waters</td>
<td>Watford, Hertfordshire, U.K.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sigma</td>
<td>Poole, Dorset, U.K.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III

EVALUATION OF SPERM-WASHING AS A

POTENTIAL METHOD OF REDUCING HIV TRANSMISSION IN

HIV-DISCORDANT COUPLES WISHING TO HAVE

CHILDREN

III.1. INTRODUCTION

Semen is an important vehicle in sexual transmission of HIV-1 and thus the level of virus in semen may be an important factor affecting the rate of transmission. HIV-1 is present in semen both as cell-free virus (Vernazza et al., 1996; Liuzzi et al., 1995; Liuzzi et al., 1996; Menzo et al., 1992; Gupta et al., 1997; Baccetti et al., 1991; Bagasra et al., 1988; Bagasra et al., 1990; Rasheed et al., 1995; Coombs et al., 1998; Dyer et al., 1996) and non-sperm cell-associated virus (Vernazza et al., 1996; Baccetti et al., 1991; Bagasra et al., 1988; Bagasra et al., 1990), in particular associated with T lymphocytes and macrophages (Quyale et al., 1997). However, whether spermatozoa are infected with HIV remains controversial. A number of groups have presented data suggesting that HIV attaches to, and infects, spermatozoa (Bagasra et al., 1988; Bagasra et al., 1994; Baccetti et al., 1994; Scofield, 1992; Scofield et al., 1994; Gobert et al., 1990), possibly via CD4-like molecules (Ashida and Scofield, 1987; Bagasra et al., 1994; Scofield et al., 1992;
Scofield et al, 1994; Gobert et al, 1990), however some groups have failed to detect CD4 expression on sperm (Wolff and Anderson, 1988^a; Wolff and Anderson, 1988^b; El-Demiry et al, 1986). If CD4 or CD4-like molecules are present on sperm they could play an important role in infection of sperm with HIV-1 since CD4 is the primary cell receptor for HIV-1. Whilst some laboratories have provided evidence that spermatozoa are infected with HIV (Bagasra et al, 1988; Bagasra et al, 1994; Baccetti et al, 1991; Baccetti et al, 1994 Scofield et al, 1994) others could not detect HIV-1 particles or proviral sequences in spermatozoa (Mermin et al, 1991; Van Voorhis et al, 1991; Quayle et al, 1997).

There are a number of discordant couples, in whom the male is HIV positive and the woman HIV negative, who wish to have children. To conceive, they must abandon condom-protected intercourse risking HIV transmission to the woman and subsequently to her child. Semprini et al have conducted a program of assisted conception for such discordant couples since 1989 to minimise the risk of HIV transmission (Semprini et al, 1992). The assumption in this program was that spermatozoa are a reservoir for HIV in semen and therefore the spermatozoa are washed to remove seminal plasma and non-sperm cells (NSCs) by gradient centrifugation and ‘swim-up’ procedures, before use in artificial insemination. Such ‘sperm washing’ may reduce the amount of virus present in the spermatozoa sample, or even eliminate it completely, but this has previously only been evaluated by the relatively insensitive method of antibody detection of viral antigen on the processed sperm (Semprini et al, 1992). Artificial insemination timed with ovulation may also minimise the number of exposures of the
uninfected female partner to potentially infected material. To date Semprini’s group have already carried out 1,690 inseminations for 543 couples resulting in almost 240 pregnancies with no seroconversion in mothers or their babies (Semprini, personal communication, 1999). Also, Marina et al reported that 101 inseminations using washed spermatozoa resulted in 31 pregnancies and both 28 mothers (3 miscarriages) and their 37 babies remained HIV seronegative (Marina et al, 1998). The aim of this part of thesis was to determine where HIV resides in semen. In particular we wished to determine whether HIV associates with spermatozoa, or are infected or have the potential to be infected by HIV and thus to evaluate whether ‘sperm washing’ is effective in risk reduction. A summary of methods used for ‘sperm washing’ and assays performed in this chapter are illustrated in fig.III.1.

III.2. Results

III.2.1. HIV-1 RNA Load in Seminal Fractions and Blood Plasma

Blood and semen samples were obtained from eleven HIV-1 positive patients with blood CD4 counts of 93-786 cells/μl. Whole semen was separated into plasma, live ‘swim-up’ spermatozoa and NSC by differential gradient centrifugation followed by a ‘swim-up’ process (fig.III.1). The ‘swim-up’ procedure reduced the sperm count by up to one log compared with that in the whole ejaculate as reported by others (Lasheeb et al, 1997). The level of viral RNA in spermatozoa
Fig. III.1. Diagram showing semen sample preparation and analyses of each seminal component

Each semen sample was separated into seminal plasma, non-spermatozoa and motile spermatozoa by differential centrifugation over 40%/80% Medicol Medium Isotonic (MMI) followed by a 'swim-up' process. All three fractions were assessed for HIV-1 RNA load and presence of viral DNA. Expression of CD4, CCR5 and CXCR4 on non-sperm cells and spermatozoa were analysed by flow cytometry.
Sample preparation

- Seminal fluid
- 40% MMI
- 80% MMI

Centrifugation

- Seminal plasma
- NSC fraction
- Spermatozoa (dead/less motile)
- Live spermatozoa

Wash pellet containing live spermatozoa and incubate ('swim-up')

Analysis

- HIV-1 RNA load assay
- HIV-1 proviral DNA assay
- Expression of CD4
  - CCR5
  - CXCR4
- HIV-1 RNA load assay
- HIV-1 proviral DNA assay
- Expression of CD4
  - CCR5
  - CXCR4
was compared with that in whole semen and in blood plasma. Viral load assays were performed using a commercial assay, NucliSens™ which has previously been reported to be a more reliable assay for evaluation of viral load in semen samples compared with Amplicor (Roche) (Dyer et al, 1996). It has also been shown that semen has inhibitory activity against Taq DNA polymerase resulting in insufficient viral load assay (Dyer et al, 1996), and we demonstrated that inhibition could be avoided by extraction of RNA with silica as employed in the NucliSens™ system. The assay was performed on 100μl of blood plasma, 100μl of seminal plasma (diluted 1:4), 100μl unseparated semen (diluted 1:10), 1-10 x 10^5 spermatozoa, or 1-10 x 10^5 NSCs. Frozen and thawed blood plasma and seminal plasma samples were used. NSCs and spermatozoa fractions in lysis buffer were snap frozen prior to the assay (II.4.3. and II.5.3). The aim was to determine where HIV was located and also to examine whether ‘sperm washing’ significantly reduced the viral load in the spermatozoa to be used for insemination. Table III.1 illustrates that in all semen samples the ‘swim up’ procedure reduced the amount of virus in the spermatozoa to lower than the detection limit (LDL; ranged from 20 to 80 copies per ml per sample tested). HIV-1 RNA was not detected in the non-swim up spermatozoa or the 80%/40% interface (non-motile spermatozoa). The NucliSens™ assay incorporates three standard calibrators into each sample before RNA extraction, which demonstrates efficient RNA extraction and amplification for every sample tested. The calibrators amplified with the same efficiency in all samples tested (with the exception of patient 6 in the spermatozoal fraction) and therefore there was no evidence to suggest that there was any variation in the extraction of RNA or
amplification between fractions tested. No evidence that spermatozoa, even when
death or non-motile, were reservoirs of HIV RNA, was found. Four out of eleven
samples were positive for HIV RNA in the NSC fraction, all of whom had
significant viral loads in the whole semen sample. The data in Table III.1 indicates
that the viral reservoirs in semen are the seminal plasma and the NSCs.

III.2.2. Proviral DNA Detection in Seminal Cells and PBMCs

It was possible that washed spermatozoa may contain latent virus in the form of
integrated proviral DNA. Therefore each of the seminal fluid cellular fractions
and PBMCs were tested for HIV-1 DNA by nested PCR (II.5.2) using primers
designed to specifically amplify a highly conserved region of the HIV-1 envelope
region and primers for β-globin as a positive control. DNA from PBMCs (10^6
cells) was extracted using Tri Reagent™ (II.4.1). Only a small number of NSCs
(between 3x10^5 and 5x10^6 total) were recovered and therefore initially Tri
Reagent™ was used as this allows extraction of both DNA and RNA from same
sample. However, this method was not efficient in extracting DNA and also the
nucleic acid extracted was not amplified by PCR due to PCR inhibitory factors in
semen (Dyer et al, 1996) as mentioned above. Thus extracting DNA by the silica
capturing method of the NucliSens™ (II.4.3) was used as an alternative when
extracting DNA from semen, spermatozoa and NSCs. We have also found that
spermatozoa were not easily lysed using Tri Reagent™.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Number</th>
<th>Date of Diagnosis</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>CD4 (No. cells µl⁻¹)</th>
<th>Blood Plasma (Copies ml⁻¹)</th>
<th>Seminal Fluid (Copies ml⁻¹)</th>
<th>Seminal Plasma (Copies ml⁻¹)</th>
<th>NSC Copies (no. cells)</th>
<th>Spermatozoa Copies (no. cells)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1. 8. 91</td>
<td>d4T, 3TC, Ritonavir, Saquinavir</td>
<td>425</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL (10⁶)</td>
<td>LDL (10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1. 1. 86</td>
<td>d4T, 3TC, Saquinavir</td>
<td>786</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL (5x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (6x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1. 1. 86</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>8,300</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL (10⁶)</td>
<td>LDL (1x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1. 3. 95</td>
<td>AZT, 3TC, Indinavir</td>
<td>279</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL (5x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (5x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1. 1. 93</td>
<td>ddI, 3TC, Nelfinavir, Nevaripine</td>
<td>131</td>
<td>380,000</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>7,600</td>
<td>LDL (5 x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (4 x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>21. 3. 89</td>
<td>d4T, 3TC, Nelfinavir</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL (10⁶)</td>
<td>Invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1. 1. 94</td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>400,000</td>
<td>11,000</td>
<td>5,200</td>
<td>1,700 (3x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1. 8. 89</td>
<td>AZT, ddI</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>8,600</td>
<td>21,200</td>
<td>2,080</td>
<td>780 (5x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (6x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>15. 1. 92</td>
<td>d4T, 3TC, DMP266</td>
<td>187</td>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>24,000 (5x10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (5x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>9. 8. 94</td>
<td>ddI, d4T, Nevaripine</td>
<td>247</td>
<td>69,000</td>
<td>176,000</td>
<td>68,000</td>
<td>54,000 (10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (10⁵)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>6. 6. 94</td>
<td>ddI</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>200,000</td>
<td>200,000</td>
<td>68,000</td>
<td>LDL (10⁵)</td>
<td>LDL (6x10⁵)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table III.1. Viral Load in Semen and Blood**

Whole semen was separated into seminal plasma and its cellular components [non-sperm cells (NSC) and spermatozoa] and the level of viral RNA determined by NucliSens™. All samples were successfully amplified except the spermatozoal fraction for patient 6, which inhibited the amplification in two tests. A number of samples were tested on more than one occasion resulting in comparable values.
The sensitivity of the DNA PCR was tested by isolating and amplification of DNA from a defined number of OM10.1 cells (NIBSC); each cell carries a single copy of HIV proviral DNA. By logarithmic end point dilution of the DNA and PCR using β-globin and the HIV env-primers it was demonstrated that these products were amplified with the same efficiency, and that the PCR could detect an input of 1 to 10 β-globin or HIV env sequences i.e. 1-10 cells (fig.III.2). A negative result was concluded only if the sample was negative in three separate experiments. Ten of the eleven patients had viral DNA present in PBMCs, unfractionated semen and NSCs. Patient 4 did not have detectable viral DNA present in PBMCs or NSCs although the unfractionated semen sample was positive in two out of three reactions (fig.III.3). Patient 4 also did not have detectable viral RNA in any of the compartments studied (Table III.1). Viral DNA was undetected in all spermatozoa samples analysed (Fig.III.3).

III.2.3. Expression of CD4 and HIV-1 co-receptors on seminal Cells

The potential of the spermatozoa to be infected by HIV-1 or the possibility that virus could simply attach to the spermatozoa cell surface was determined by evaluating expression of CD4 or the HIV co-receptors CCR5 or CXCR4 by flow cytometry in these cells (II.3.1). The data illustrated in Fig.III.4 are representative (sample 1) of the profiles obtained from 5 healthy volunteers. The percentages of positive cells were determined by comparison with cells incubated with isotype matched control antibodies. Positive markers (M1) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker.
Fig.III.2. Nested PCR showing sensitivity of viral DNA detection

OM10.1 cells which contain one copy of HIV-1 viral DNA were used to test the sensitivity of the PCR. The β-globin gene is a house-keeping gene (ie. one copy per cell) and was used as a positive control. The amount of DNA used in this reaction was equivalent to 7x10^3 cells [Neat (N)] and the DNA was diluted (10^{-1} to 10^{-7}) to reach the end-point (ie. no DNA). 50 bp marker (M) was used. The data demonstrates that the PCR assay can detect viral and β-globin DNA with as few as 1-10 copies.
Fig.III.3. Viral DNA detection by Nested PCR

Viral DNA in peripheral mononuclear cells and seminal cellular components were assessed by a nested PCR and visualized on 1.5% agarose gel in the presence of ethidium bromide. The representative gel shown is patient 7 (a). The assay result from patient 4 shows that proviral DNA was detected only in unfractionated semen (b). Lane 1 represents β-globin gene amplification (product size 109 bp). Lane 2 represents HIV-1 envelope gene amplification (product size 304 bp).
(a) Patient 7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient</th>
<th>PBMC</th>
<th>Semen</th>
<th>NSC</th>
<th>Sperm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

M 1 2 1 2 1 2 1 2

100 bp, 200 bp, 300 bp

HIV-1 env (304 bp), β-globin (109 bp)

(b) Patient 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient</th>
<th>PBMC</th>
<th>Semen</th>
<th>NSC</th>
<th>Sperm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

M 1 2 1 2 1 2

100 bp

HIV-1 env (304 bp), β-globin (109 bp)
Fig. III.4. Expression of Cell Surface Markers on Seminal Cells

Semen was separated into non-spermatozoa cells (NSC) (a) and spermatozoa (f). NSC were stained with antibodies directed against the HIV receptors, CD4 (b), CXCR4 (c), CCR5 (d) and also the monocyte marker CD14 (e). The spermatozoa fraction was confirmed with anti-sperm antibody (g) and evaluated for expression of HIV receptors, CD4 (h), CXCR4 (i), and CCR5 (j). Dotted lines represent isotype controls and the solid lines represent specific antibody binding.
The ‘swim-up’ procedure yielded very pure populations of spermatozoa cells (Fig.III.4g). Fig.III.4h and Fig.III.4j demonstrate absence of detectable CD4 and CCR5 on the spermatozoa cell surface. Two different clones of anti-CD4 antibodies were used (fig.III.4h for Q4120 and fig.III.5c for MT310). Low levels of CXCR4 expression were observed (Fig.III.4i) on spermatozoa. Whether this level of CXCR4 would be sufficient to allow X4 viruses to bind must be confirmed in vitro, although lack of expression of CD4 and CCR5 on spermatozoa suggests that these cells are very unlikely to be readily infected with R5 strains. Within the NSCs a population of cells exists with intense expression of CD4 (Fig.III.4b). These cells may be CD3+ lymphocytes or monocytes as shown by expression of CD14 (Fig.III.4e). Within the NSC low levels of CXCR4 were detected compared with the isotype control (fig.III.4c), but there was a distinct population of CCR5 expressing cells (Fig.III.4d). This may suggest the possibility of compartmentalisation of CCR5 utilising viruses within semen which is discussed below. A summary of phenotypic analyses of seminal cells obtained from 5 health individuals is illustrated in table III.2.

To determine whether seminal cells co-express both CD4 and CCR5 or CD4 and CXCR4, two colour staining was attempted but was not successful:

i) Staining cells with anti-CD4 antibody first, followed by washing and staining with anti-CCR5 antibody (fig.III.6a) or anti-CXCR4 antibody (fig.III.7a).

ii) Staining cells with anti-CCR5 antibody (fig.III.6b) or anti-CXCR4 antibody (fig.III.7b), followed by washing and staining with anti-CD4 antibody.
iii) Staining cells with anti-CD4 antibody and anti-CCR5 antibody (fig.III.6c) or anti-CXCR4 antibody (fig.III.7c) together at the same time. As shown in fig.III.6 and III.7 the cells were only stained with first antibody or did not stain at all when stained as in (iii). This could be due to the fact that CD4 and HIV-1 co-receptors are expressed close to each other on the cell surface ('steric hindrance') (Xiao et al, 1999; Lapham et al, 1999).

**Table III.2. Summary of phenotypic analyses of seminal cells from HIV-1 negative individuals**

(a) Percentages of NSCs expressing CD4, CCR5, CXCR4 or CD14.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CD4</th>
<th>CCR5</th>
<th>CXCR4</th>
<th>CD14</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sample 1</td>
<td>43.2%</td>
<td>19.0%</td>
<td>9.4%</td>
<td>14.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 2</td>
<td>44.0%</td>
<td>11.5%</td>
<td>6.2%</td>
<td>8.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 3</td>
<td>24.8%</td>
<td>23.0%</td>
<td>5.8%</td>
<td>18.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 4</td>
<td>38.8%</td>
<td>21.2%</td>
<td>7.8%</td>
<td>10.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 5</td>
<td>41.3%</td>
<td>18.1%</td>
<td>8.9%</td>
<td>18.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SE</td>
<td>38.8±3.5</td>
<td>18.6±1.9</td>
<td>7.6±0.7</td>
<td>14.0±2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) Percentages of spermatozoa expressing CD4, CCR5 or CXCR4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CD4</th>
<th>CCR5</th>
<th>CXCR4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sample 1</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.03%</td>
<td>10.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 2</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 3</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 4</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>1.6%</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 5</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SE</td>
<td>0.8±0.07</td>
<td>0.6±0.3</td>
<td>7.1±1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. III.5. Detection of surface expression of CD4 on spermatozoa

(a) Dot plot showing spermatozoal fraction.

(b) Spermatozoa fraction was confirmed with specific binding of anti-sperm antibody.

(c) Using a different clone (MT310) of anti-CD4 antibody confirmed that spermatozoa do not express CD4 on the cell surface.
Fig. III.6. Double staining of seminal non-spermatozoal cells with anti-CD4 and anti-CCR5 antibodies (FL1=anti-CCR5 antibody)

(a) Staining with anti-CD4 antibody first followed by washing and staining with anti-CCR5 antibody. Cells were stained with anti-CD4 antibody only.

(b) Staining with anti-CCR5 antibody first followed by washing and staining with anti-CD4 antibody. Cells were stained with anti-CCR5 antibody only.

(c) Staining with both anti-CD4 antibody and anti-CCR5 antibody together at the same time. Most cells (97.88%) were not stained with either of antibodies.
Fig. III.7. Double staining of seminal non-spermatozoal cells with anti-CD4 and anti-CXCR4 antibodies (FL2=anti-CXCR4 antibody)

(a) Staining with anti-CD4 antibody first followed by washing and staining with anti-CXCR4 antibody. (b) Staining with anti-CXCR4 antibody first followed by washing and staining with anti-CD4 antibody.

(c) Staining with both anti-CD4 antibody and anti-CXCR4 antibody together at the same time.

Percentage of cells stained with anti-CXCR4 antibody increased from 5.1% in (a) to 14.6% in (b). Percentage of cells stained with anti-CD4 antibody decreased from 16.5% in (a) to 3.2% in (b). About 95% of cells were not stained with either of the antibodies in (c).
111.2.4. RT-PCR for CD4

Expression of CD4 on spermatozoa was undetectable by flow cytometry (fig. III.4h). To confirm the data obtained by flow cytometry, expression of CD4 was also examined at the mRNA level by RT-PCR (II.5.1) using β-actin primers as a positive control. RNA from PBMC (10^6 cells) was extracted using Tri reagent™ (II.4.1.1.) and from spermatozoa using NucliSens™ Lysis buffer. Again, extraction of RNA from the seminal cellular fraction was attempted using Tri reagent™ and RNAzol™ B (II.4.2) but failed. Spermatozoa did not appear to be lysed using Tri reagent™ and RNAzol™ B. The results demonstrated that CD4 mRNA was not detectable in spermatozoa (fig. III.8) thus confirming the flow cytometry data.

111.2.5. Establishing a clinical service of ‘sperm-washing’ for HIV-discordant couples

Together with the Assisted Conception Unit, the Obstetrics and Gynaecology department and the HIV medicine department at Chelsea & Westminster Hospital we now provide a ‘sperm-washing’ service to HIV discordant couples. Patients undertake a series of counselling sessions and sign a consent form indicating that they understand that they are participating in a risk reduction, not a risk-free programme. Prior to receiving the ‘sperm-washing’ service both male and female partners undertake sexual health and gynaecology screens (table III.3).
RNA was extracted from PBMC (positive control RNA) using Tri reagent and from spermatozoa using NucliSens Lysis buffer. cDNA was synthesised using oligo d(T)$_6$ and MuLV reverse transcriptase followed by PCR for β-actin as a positive control and CD4. The RT-PCR products were visualised on 1.5% agarose gel in the presence of ethidium bromide with 100bp marker (M).
Table III.3. Investigations required prior to intra-uterine insemination (IUI)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sexual health screen</th>
<th>Baseline gynaecology tests</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Male</strong></td>
<td><strong>Female</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonorrhoea</td>
<td>HIV-1, -2 antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syphilis</td>
<td>Hepatitis B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlamydia</td>
<td>Hepatitis C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Candida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gonorrhoea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trichomoniasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chlamydia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bacterial Vaginosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Criteria for continuing treatment: No less than 20x10⁶ spermatozoa, no more than 80% abnormal spermatozoa, and not less than 50% motility.
Semen sample preparation and analysis are carried out in the Immunology department. *In vitro*-fertilisation (IVF) medium is incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ overnight prior to semen preparation. The semen samples are processed within one hour of donation as described in II.3.2, except that Medicol Medium Isotonic (MMI) was replaced by PureSperm® as MMI is commercially no longer available. Semen parameters are initially assessed as outlined by the World Health Organisation (table III.4).

### Table III.4. Normal semen parameters outlined by WHO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>&gt;2.0ml</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>7.2-8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sperm concentration</td>
<td>&gt;20x10⁶/ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total sperm count</td>
<td>&gt;100x10⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motility</td>
<td>&gt;50% with forward progression or 25% or more with rapid progression within 60 minutes of ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphology</td>
<td>&gt;30% with normal forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitality</td>
<td>&gt;75% live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White blood cell count</td>
<td>&lt;2x10⁶/ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunobead test</td>
<td>&lt;20% spermatozoa with adherent particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAR test</td>
<td>&lt;10% spermatozoa with adherent particles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(test for presence of IgG on the spermatozoa)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A fraction of the purified spermatozoa cells to be used for the HIV-1 RNA test (10⁶ cells) is snap frozen and thawed quickly prior to the assay to ensure complete cell lysis since we found that spermatozoa cells are not readily lysed by other methods. HIV-1 RNA levels in the purified spermatozoa cell fraction are quantitated using NucliSens™ (10⁶ cells per test). The woman is inseminated with ‘washed’ sperm only when HIV-1 RNA load in the tested fraction of washed
sperm is below the detection limit. Each patient may undergo three insemination attempts and if the woman fails to become pregnant after three attempts, the couple may be advised to receive *in vitro* fertilisation with washed sperm. Table III.5 illustrates semen and purified spermatozoa analyses. The motility of spermatozoa after 'Sperm-washing' procedure was between 85% and 100%. In some patients, motility of sperm cells and total sperm counts in whole semen were lower compared with normal semen parameters outlined by WHO (table III.4). This may be because HIV interferes with spermatogenesis. Arrested spermatogenesis in the testes in AIDS has been reported (Muciaccia *et al*, 1998). It also has been shown that TNF-α, which has been shown to be increased in blood plasma of HIV patients (Lore *et al*, 1999), has negative effects on sperm motility (Estrada *et al*, 1997). Spermatogonia express galactosylceramides (Brogi *et al*, 1995) which is a component of the neural receptor for HIV (Bath *et al*, 1991; Harouse *et al*, 1991), suggesting that this glycolipid could be involved in a potential interaction of HIV with spermatogonia, but this hypothesis has not been confirmed. Following 63 inseminations in 31 women, 12 women have become pregnant. However, 5 miscarriages have occurred but there have been 3 live births with 4 currently ongoing. In addition 9 women have undergone IVF treatment resulting in 1 pregnancy. All these women have remained seronegative.
III.3. DISCUSSION

The viral reservoir in semen was investigated and furthermore, whether spermatozoa are infected or have potential to be infected with HIV was also determined. Whether spermatozoa are infected with HIV has been controversial. This is of particular importance in the evaluation of 'sperm washing' as a viable risk reduction option for HIV discordant couples wishing to have children. We did not demonstrate the presence of CD4 on the spermatozoa cell surface using two different clones of anti-CD4 antibodies and also mRNA for CD4 was not detected. There was no surface expression of CCR5 on spermatozoa. Although a low level of CXCR4 expression was observed it would be very unlikely that spermatozoa are susceptible to infection with HIV since we demonstrated clearly that there was no detectable surface expression of CD4 on spermatozoa cells or CD4 mRNA in spermatozoa cells. Neither HIV-1 RNA nor DNA was detected in any spermatozoa fraction of any of our subjects. Our data demonstrate that 'sperm washing' achieves substantial reductions in the level of virus present, although due to our sample size it is not possible to guarantee that the LDL would be achieved with all patients. Our data is in concordance with clinical data from Semprini and colleagues where no HIV infection has occurred after 1,690 inseminations with washed sperm (Semprini, 1999, Personal communication). Our data was further supported by recent studies led by Izopet (Pasquier et al, 2000) who demonstrated removal of HIV-1 after a 'sperm washing' process. A study by Lasheeb et al indicated that 'sperm washing' reduced HIV viral load in semen, although in this case the spermatozoa were separated after freezing of the
semen sample, which could result in cell lysis, allowing RNA contamination of the cellular compartments (Lasheeb et al, 1997). In our experiments semen was donated from patients with a range of viral loads in peripheral blood (LDL to 400,000 copies ml\(^{-1}\)). Six individuals had HIV RNA present in the seminal plasma, four of whom had viral RNA present in the NSCs. Nine individuals had detectable proviral DNA in the NSC. The main viral reservoir in semen was the seminal plasma and NSC (Table III.1). The NSCs represent a heterogeneous population containing immature germ cells, leukocytes and epithelial cells. The leukocyte fraction contains CD68\(^+\) macrophages, CD3\(^+\) T cells (both CD4\(^+\) and CD8\(^+\)) and CD103\(^+\) T cells which are found in the epithelium and lamina propria (Quayle et al, 1997). The main reservoir for HIV appears to be the lymphocyte and macrophage populations, but not the immature germ cells (Quayle et al, 1997). Poor correlation was found between the viral load in semen and that in peripheral blood (Table III.1). For example patient 5 had 380,000 copies ml\(^{-1}\) in blood and LDL in semen, and patient 9 had only 1,200 copies per ml in blood but 56,000 copies ml\(^{-1}\) in unfractionated semen. Other groups report similar findings (Liuzzi et al, 1996; Coombs et al, 1998; Gupta et al. 1997). Shedding of virus into semen may be intermittent with the level of seminal virus increasing with factors such as decreased CD4 count and asymptomatic genital tract infection (Vernazza et al, 1997; Xu et al, 1997). Therefore because the presence of HIV in blood plasma is not always correlated with its presence in semen, detection of virus in blood plasma may not be a good surrogate for infectivity via sexual transmission. The data also suggests that blood and semen may represent two distinct compartments in terms of HIV replication. There is some evidence provided by
other groups (Rasheed et al, 1995; Liuzzi et al, 1996; Liuzzi et al, 1995; Gupta et al, 1997; Coombs et al, 1998; Zhu et al, 1996; Delwart et al, 1998; Kiessling et al, 1998; Byrn et al, 1997; Roos et al, 1992) as discussed in chapter I, suggesting that HIV in semen may not arise from the same reservoir as in peripheral blood.

It has been postulated that during sexual transmission of HIV the selection of the R5 viruses takes place at the mucosal surface, since it is the Langerhans cells (LCs) which may be the first cells to become infected (Spira et al, 1996; Blauvelt, 1997; Zambruno et al, 1995; Miller and Hu, 1999), and these cells express functional CCR5 but not CXCR4 (Zaitseva et al, 1997). It has been postulated that semen is a major reservoir for the CCR5 utilising viruses thus allowing preferential transmission of R5 strains. This hypothesis is supported by phenotypic and genotypic analyses of viral isolates from blood and semen (Zhu et al, 1996; Kroodsma et al, 1994) which found predominantly M-tropic virus present in semen regardless of the tropism of virus found in the periphery. We have shown that the NSCs express CCR5, but negligible amounts of CXCR4 suggesting that this may contribute to the selection of R5 viruses within semen. However, restriction of SI variants from the male genital tract is not always observed (Delwart et al, 1998). As sexual transmission accounts for the vast majority of HIV transmission it is of pivotal importance to determine whether the virus within semen represents a distinct compartment of viral replication and hence viral phenotype. An effective prophylactic vaccine must confer protection against the phenotype shed in genital secretions.
‘Sperm washing’ as a risk reduction program has been a controversial area. Mandelbrot et al (Mandelbrot et al, 1997) believe the risk of transmission is sufficiently low that HIV discordant couples may attempt natural conception. They report a follow up of 92 HIV negative women with HIV positive partners. Most couples had received pre-conceptual counselling on the risk of transmission, and were advised to pinpoint ovulation to reduce the risk. Two women seroconverted at seven months of pregnancy and another two post-partum, with seroconversions restricted to couples with inconsistent condom use. Perhaps advising individuals that they may abandon condoms to conceive may encourage intermittent condom use. Our data suggest that isolating the sperm for insemination could greatly reduce such a risk.

Antiretroviral therapy has a marked effect on HIV shedding in semen, as treatment-induced changes in viral load in blood are generally reflected by corresponding changes in viral load in semen (Vernazza et al, 1997). Thus a further risk reduction exercise might be to encourage all HIV+ males who wish to participate in such a programme to consider commencing potent antiretroviral therapy, however the teratogenicity of many of the drugs currently in use has not been completely evaluated. Our data suggests that the primary reservoir for HIV RNA in semen is the seminal plasma and NSC, and that the level of viral RNA could be reduced to LDL in the washed spermatozoal fraction. Secondly all the spermatozoa fractions analysed for latent proviral DNA in this study were negative where the unfractionated semen (10 out of 11 patients) were positive. We have failed to detect the presence of CD4 or CCR5 on spermatozoa and the
expression of CXCR4 on the spermatozoa was low, suggesting that these cells are not likely to be readily infected by HIV. Therefore, we provide evidence to suggest that ‘washing sperm’ reduces the amount of HIV present and hence will reduce the risk of HIV transmission. Taken together with the clinical data from Semprini’s group we would promote ‘sperm washing’ as an efficient and simple procedure to reduce the risk of HIV transmission in HIV discordant couples wishing to have children. Furthermore, it has been shown that the ‘sperm-washing’ process also reduced the risk of hepatitis C virus infection (Pasquier et al, 2000). We have tested for the presence of hepatitis C virus in purified spermatozoa in one patient with known hepatitis C status and hepatitis C virus was undetected (data not shown). The ‘sperm-washing’ service is in the place within this hospital trust and we have performed 63 artificial inseminations in 31 women with 12 pregnancies and 3 live births.

Further work

i) Characterisation of the virus present in semen

Our data demonstrated that there is a distinct population of cells expressing CCR5 in NSC fraction. The tropism of the virus in semen could be determined.

ii) In vitro infection of LCs or LC-like DCs with viral isolates from semen

Whether viruses in semen can infect LCs or LC-like DC could be assessed (chapter V).

iii) In vitro infection of spermatozoa with X4 strains of HIV-1
Although we have demonstrated that spermatozoa do not express CD4 on the cell surface (Fig.III.3i) and do not produce mRNA for CD4 (fig.III.6) there was a low level of CXCR4 expressed on spermatozoa. To further analyse whether spermatozoa may be infected with HIV-1, *in vitro* infection of spermatozoa with virus could be performed.

iv)  *In vitro* infection of NSCs with HIV-1

*In vitro* infection of NSCs with X4 strains of HIV-1 would allow assessment of whether the level of CXCR4 on NSC is in fact sufficient for infection with X4 viruses.
Dendritic cells (DCs) are bone marrow derived cells [except for the follicular DCs that are present within the B-lymphoid follicles of lymphoid tissue (Matsumoto et al, 1997)] and are the most potent antigen presenting cells (APCs). DCs initiate primary immune responses as they can take up, process and present antigens to and stimulate naïve T cells. Mature DCs are more than 100 times more potent than macrophages in activating naïve T cells in vitro (Banchereau and Steinman, 1998). DCs can also potentiate secondary immune responses by presentation to and stimulation of memory T cells. DCs at different maturation stages are found in both the non-lymphoid and the lymphoid tissues. DC progenitors migrate to non-lymphoid tissues, where they develop into ‘immature’ DCs. The ‘immature’ DCs have high capacity for capturing and processing antigen but poor T cell stimulatory capacity as they have little or no co-stimulatory activity (Austyn, 1998; Banchereau and Steiman, 1998; Hart, 1997; Cella et al, 1997). ‘Immature’ DCs in tissues include Langerhans’ cells (LCs) in the epidermis of skin and the mucosa. LCs take up antigen by macropinocytosis or by mannose receptor-mediated endocytosis (Sallusto et al, 1995). Pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α,
IL-1β (Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1994; Sallusto, et al, 1995) and IL-6 (Jonuleit, et al, 1997), and also the uptake of antigen, induce activation in vitro. The activated DCs migrate to the draining lymph nodes where they mature. Mature DCs have poor ability to capture and process antigen but express increased levels of cell-surface MHC class II and co-stimulatory molecules [e.g. CD80/B7.1, CD86/B7.2 and B7-DC (Tseng et al, 2001)]. Hence the mature DCs acquire the ability to present antigen acquired at the immature stage and can activate naïve T cells via a co-stimulatory.

Both semen and LCs in the mucosa may play an important role in transmission of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs). For example, in HIV infection via sexual contact, LCs in the lamina propria of the mucosa may be the first cells to become infected (Spira et al, 1996; Joag et al, 1997; Blauvelt et al, 1997; Zambruno et al, 1995; Miller and Hu, 1999) and semen is the vehicle for the virus. Seminal plasma also contains immunosuppressive components such as prostaglandins, prostasomes, polyamines and TGF-β (Alexander and Anderson. 1987; Kelly, 1995). It is known that prostaglandins which are present in human semen at about 10^8 fold higher concentrations than in peripheral blood (Kelly, 1997), have immunomodulatory effects. For instance, prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) is a pro-inflammatory molecule and activates/matures DCs and subsequently induce IL-12 production by DCs (Riesser et al, 1997; Riesser et al, 1998; Portanova et al, 1996). PGE2, is also known to inhibit the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines by lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-activated macrophages (Strassmann et al, 1994). Thus, PGE2 inhibits LPS-induced IL-12 production by macrophages and
stimulates IL-10 production in whole blood culture (Kraan et al, 1995; Kelly et al, 1997). This cytokine switch to Th2-type may induce anergy or peripheral tolerance. Taken together, PGE2 has both pro-inflammatory and suppressive activities for APCs. Prostaglandins in human seminal plasma include four main species which are 19-hydroxy PGE2, 19-hydroxy PGE1, PGE1 and PGE2. 19-OH PGE1 and 19-OH PGE2 are, as far as is known, unique to semen (reviewed by Kelly, 1997). Cells in the mucosa of female reproductive tract do not recognise and respond to sperm or non-sperm cells in seminal fluid as foreign antigens, however, at the same time, they need to respond to potential pathogens in semen.

In this part of thesis a study of the effects of seminal plasma on the phenotype and function of DCs generated from CD14+ cells (Sallusto and Lanzavecchia 1994), and the possible role of seminal plasma in transmission of STDs, including HIV, are assessed. A summary of these experiments is illustrated in fig.IV.1.

**IV.2. Results**

Data from allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reactions (MLRs) was presented in the form of mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors (SE) for triplicates and in the form of mean stimulation indices (SI) with SE, for single representatives and for summary of all experiments, respectively. Data from flow cytometric analyses was presented in the form of mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) with SE. The live MDDC population was gated and designated
Fig. IV.1. Flow chart describing experiments performed in chapter 4

CD14$^+$ monocytes were positively selected from PBMCs (HIV-negative) using CD14 MicroBeads (II.2.4). CD14$^+$ monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs) were generated in the presence of GM-CSF and IL-4 (II.2.5). After 5 days of culture cells were pulsed with two different concentrations of seminal plasma (SPM) and/or 200U/ml of TNF-α (II.2.6). All MDDC populations were assessed for phenotypes (II.3.1) and allogeneic capacities (II.2.7). SPM-pulsed MDDCs were further assessed for anergy (II.2.8). MDDCs were also pulsed with PGE2, 19-OH PGE2 (II.2.6) or lipid-extracted SPM (II.2.2) after 5 days of culture and their allostimulatory abilities were analysed by allogeneic MLRs (II.2.7).
as R1 (fig.IV.4d, 5d, 6d) and expression of CD1a, CD4, HLA-DR, CD80 and CD86 on MDDCs was analysed within this population. The degree of increase or decrease in levels of expression was calculated using equation 2 described in II.7. The percentages of positive cells were determined by comparison with cells incubated with isotype matched control antibodies. Positive markers (M1 in fig.IV.4) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker. Single representatives of each flow cytometry profile are also shown.

**IV.2.1. TNF-α and seminal plasma titration**

Optimal concentrations of TNF-α and seminal plasma for use in this study and studies described in chapter 5 were determined. Fig.IV.2 shows the effect of different concentrations of TNF-α on the allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs. 200U/ml of TNF-α had the most potent effect on allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs compared with control MDDCs and hence 200U of TNF-α per ml of MDDC culture (10^6 cells/ml) was used in subsequent experiments.

MDDCs were pulsed with a pool of seminal plasma from six HIV-negative individuals as described in II.2.6. Overnight incubation of MDDCs with 10% seminal plasma resulted in a very low viable cell yield ['trypan blue exclusion' (II.2.1); less than 10^3 cells/ml] when examined under a light microscope. Furthermore, seminal plasma titration experiments demonstrated that cells pulsed with 10% seminal plasma failed to stimulate allogeneic T cells (fig.IV.3). This is maybe due to a toxic effect of seminal plasma resulting from
Fig. IV.2. TNF-α titration

MDDCs were pulsed with graded concentrations (50U/ml, 100U/ml, 200U/ml, 400U/ml) of TNF-α overnight after 5 days of cultivation. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [³H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. The graph shows a mean stimulation index (SI) with standard error for 3 experiments and each experiment was set up triplicate. The table below the graph shows P values comparing allostimulatory ability of TNF-α-pulsed DCs with that of control DCs. P value for the general trends of each curve (italic) are also shown.
**Fig.IV.3. Seminal plasma titration**

MDDCs were pulsed with graded doses of seminal plasma (0.1%, 1%, 10%) overnight after 5 days of cultivation. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [³H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. The graph shows mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard errors for 2 experiments. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. Due to a small number of samples statistical analysis was not performed.
an interaction with bovine serum in MDDC culture medium, inducing the oxidative deamination of polyamines (spermine, spermidine and putrescine) in seminal plasma giving rise to formation of several toxic products such as aldehydes, ammonia and hydrogen peroxide (Agostinelli et al, 1994; Averill-Bates et al, 1993; Labib and Tomasi, 1981; Katsuta et al, 1975). Therefore, in subsequent experiments, a maximum of 1% seminal plasma was used to pulse MDDCs.

IV.2.2. Phenotypic characterisation of MDDCs treated with seminal plasma and/or TNF-α

The phenotype of MDDCs exposed to seminal plasma and/or TNF-α (as an example of a pro-inflammatory cytokine) was analysed by flow cytometry. The live MDDC population was gated and designated as R1 (fig.IV.4d, IV.5d, and IV.6d) and expression of CD1a, CD4, HLA-DR, B7.1/CD80 and B7.2/CD86 was analysed within this population. The percentages of positive cells were determined by comparison with cells incubated with isotype matched control antibodies. Positive markers (M1; fig.IV.4d, IV.5d, and IV.6d) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker.

Seminal plasma induced changes in expression of surface co-stimulatory molecules (fig.IV.4). MFI of CD80 expressed on CD80+ MDDCs decreased significantly by 43.9%(±9.9) [i.e. from 31.2(±2.7) to 17.8(±4.3); ΔMFI=13.4(±2.9)] when MDDCs were pulsed with 1% seminal plasma
compared with that of control MDDCs (P=0.04; fig.IV.4b). However, such a
decrease in the level of CD80 expression on MDDCs by 1% seminal plasma
did not result in a complete disappearance of the molecule as demonstrated by
the observation that numbers of CD80 positive MDDCs remained unchanged
(P=0.8; fig.IV.4c). The MFI of CD86 expression on the total MDDC
population was decreased significantly by 55.0%(±8.0) with 1% seminal
plasma (P=0.04; fig.IV.4a): a decrease from 331.0(±67.5) to 144.2(±29.5)
[ΔMFI=186.8(±51.1)]. This reduction in the level of CD86 expression in the
total MDDC population appeared to be associated with the reduced level of
expression on CD86^ MDDCs (fig.IV.4b) as the P value was tending towards
significance (P=0.07). Again, seminal plasma lowered the level of CD86
expression but did not reduce the proportion of CD86^ MDDCs in MDDC
population (R1) (fig.IV.4c). Decreases in expression of co-stimulatory
molecules, in particular, CD86 were observed in 5 in 7 experiments and 2
showed no changes in expression of these molecules.

When MDDCs were exposed to TNF-α alone numbers of CD86 positive cells
increased significantly (P=0.04) from 82.2(±3.6) to 92.6(±2.4): Δ% positive
cells= 10.4%(±1.7) which is 13.1%(±2.6) (fig.IV.5c). TNF-α increased the
levels of expression of CD86 on CD86^ MDDCs but did not reach statistical
significance as indicated by the P value (P=0.09; fig.IV.5b). All 5 experiments
demonstrated increased levels of CD86 expression (MFI).

When MDDCs were pulsed overnight with both 200U/ml of TNF-α (10^6
cells/ml) and seminal plasma, expression of CD86 on these cells was increased
Fig.IV.4. Phenotypic analyses of seminal plasma (SPM) pulsed MDDCs

MDDCs were pulsed with two different concentrations (0.1%, 1%) of seminal plasma overnight. Cells were washed next day and stained for CD4, HLA-DR, CD1a, CD80 and CD86 as described in II.3.1. The graph (a) shows a MFI of expression of stated markers on a total MDDC population [R1 in (d)]. The graph (b) shows a mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) of expression of stated markers on positive MDDCs [M1 in (d)] with standard error. The graph (c) shows percentage of positive cells [M1 in (d)]. All the graphs show with standard errors for 8 (for CD4, HLA-DR and CD1a) and 6 (for CD80 and CD86) identical experiments. Tables next to graphs (a) and (b) show P values comparing MFI of each marker expressed on seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs with that expressed on control MDDCs (i.e. untreated MDDCs). The table next to the graph (c) shows P values comparing percentages of positive MDDCs expressing each marker in a MDDC population pulsed with seminal plasma with those in a control MDDC population. The graph (d) shows a dot plot of MDDC population and live cells are gated and designated as R1. Graphs (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) are representatives of flow cytometry profile of CD4, CD80, CD86, HLA-DR, and CD1a, respectively. Expression of each marker was analysed in cells within the live cell population (R1). Positive markers (M1) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker.
Fig. IV.5. Phenotypic analyses of TNF-α-exposed MDDCs

MDDCs were pulsed with 200U/ml of TNF-α overnight. Cells were washed next day and stained for CD4, HLA-DR, CD1a, CD80 and CD86 as described in II.3.1. The graph (a) shows a MFI of expression of stated markers on a total MDDC population [R1 in (d)]. The graph (b) shows a mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) of expression of stated markers on negative MDDCs [M1 in (d)] with standard error. The graph (c) shows percentage of positive cells [M1 in (d)]. All the graphs show with standard errors for 5 experiments. Tables next to graphs (a) and (b) show P values comparing MFI of each marker expressed on TNF-α-pulsed MDDCs with that expressed on control MDDCs (i.e. untreated MDDCs). The table next to the graph (a) shows P values comparing percentages of positive MDDCs expressing each marker in a MDDC population exposed to TNF-α with those in a control MDDC population. The graph (d) shows a dot plot of MDDC population and live cells are gated and designated as R1. Graphs (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) are representatives of flow cytometry profile of CD4, CD1a, CD80, HLA-DR, and CD86, respectively. Expression of each marker was analysed in cells within the live cell population (R1). Positive markers (M1) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker.
**Fig.IV.6. Phenotypic analyses of MDDC exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma**

MDDCs were pulsed with two different concentrations (0.1%, 1%) of seminal plasma together with 200U/ml of TNF-α overnight. Cells were washed next day and stained for CD4, HLA-DR, CD1a, CD80 and CD86 as described in II.3.1. The graph (a) shows a MFI of expression of stated markers on a total MDDC population [R1 in (d)]. The graph (b) shows a mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) of expression of stated markers on positive MDDCs [M1 in (d)] with standard error. The graph (c) shows percentage of positive cells [M1 in (d)]. All the graphs show with standard errors of 5 experiments. Tables next to graphs (a) and (b) show P values comparing MFI of each marker expressed on MDDCs exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma with that expressed on control MDDCs (ie. untreated MDDCs). The table next to the graph (c) shows P values comparing percentages of positive MDDCs expressing each marker in a MDDC population exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma with those in a control MDDC population. The graph (d) shows a dot plot of MDDC population and live cells are gated and designated as R1. Graphs (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) are representatives of flow cytometry profile of CD4, CD1a, CD80, HLA-DR and CD86, respectively. Expression of each marker was analysed in cells within the live cell population (R1). Positive markers (M1) were placed on profiles so that less than 2% of cells stained with isotype control antibody fell within this marker.
but not significantly (P=0.2; fig.IV.6a; P=0.2; fig.IV.6b) whereas the number of CD86⁺ MDDCs remained unchanged, when compared with MDDCs pulsed with TNF-α only (fig.IV.6c). A decrease in the expression of co-stimulatory molecules induced by seminal plasma alone (fig.IV.4) was not seen when MDDCs were exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma together. 3 in 5 experiments demonstrated increased levels of CD86 by 1% seminal plasma. Taken together the data suggests that both TNF-α and seminal plasma alter the expression of co-stimulatory molecules on MDDCs and also TNF-α abrogates the effects of seminal plasma on MDDC phenotype. TNF-α alone increased (fig.IV.5) whilst seminal plasma alone decreased (fig.IV.4) co-stimulatory molecule expression. However, presence of seminal plasma did not induce any significant differences in the expression of co-stimulatory molecules on TNF-α stimulated MDDCs (fig.IV.6).

IV.2.3. Allostimulatory ability of DC treated with seminal plasma and/or TNF-α

To assess APC function, seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs were assessed for their ability to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells. Fig.IV.7c describes a mean stimulation indices (SI) of 11 experiments and demonstrates that seminal plasma significantly suppressed the allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs at cell numbers of above 500. P values comparing the allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs which were pulsed with 1% seminal plasma, with that of control MDDCs, were less than 0.05 or tending towards significance (cell number of 8000) except when allogeneic T cells were stimulated by a small
Fig. IV.7. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with two different concentrations of seminal plasma

MDDCs were pulsed with 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma (SPM) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [³H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs (a) show a representative of 7 experiments (left graph) and mean SI of these 7 experiments with SE (right graph) demonstrating suppression of allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs by seminal plasma. P values show that both 0.1% seminal plasma- and 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs demonstrated significantly reduced allostimulatory capacity. [P=0.003 (#): comparing allostimulatory capacity of 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs with that of control MDDCs; P=0.001 (❖): comparing allostimulatory capacity of 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs with that of control MDDCs]. Graphs (b) show a representative of 4 experiments (left graph) and mean SI of 4 experiments with SE (right graph) demonstrating no effect on allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs by seminal plasma. Graph (c) shows mean SI with SE of all 11 experiments. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below graph (c) shows P values comparing ability of 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells with that of control, and P values comparing ability of 1% SPM-pulsed MDDCs to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells with that of 0.1% SPM-pulsed MDDCs. P values both for the different number of MDDCs (125-8000) and for the trend curves (italic) are shown.
P values (vs. control)  
0.1% SPM 0.9 0.2 0.3 0.4 0.2 0.1 0.2 0.1 0.4 0.7 0.4 0.3 0.1 0.07 0.4 0.07 0.008 0.007
1% SPM 0.4 0.1 0.05 0.09 0.006 0.002 0.09 0.008 0.007

P values (vs. 0.1% SPM)  
1% SPM 0.4 0.7 0.4 0.3 0.1 0.07 0.4 0.07 0.008 0.007
number of DCs (cell number of less than 500). P values comparing the general trend in the allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs also showed that 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs have significantly reduced allostimulatory potentials (P=0.008). Allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs pulsed with 1% seminal plasma also decreased compared with 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs but not significantly (P=0.07). 7 experiments (fig.IV.7a; left graph: a representative of 7 experiments; right graph: mean SI of 7 experiments with SE) demonstrated suppression induced by seminal plasma (P=0.008 untreated vs. 0.1% SPM treated MDDCs; P=0.000, untreated vs. 1% SPM treated MDDCs) and 4 experiments (fig.IV.7b; left graph: a representative of 4 experiments; right graph: mean SI of 4 experiments with SE) demonstrated no effect on allostimulation capacity of MDDCs by seminal plasma (P>0.8, untreated vs. 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma treated MDDCs).

Significantly enhanced allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs treated with TNF-α alone compared with untreated MDDC was observed with greater than 95% confidence except when 1000 cells were used to stimulate allogeneic T cells (fig.IV.8b). Such a significant increase was observed in all 8 identical experiments and a single representative was presented (fig.IV.8a). The P value evaluated from the general trend curves (P=0.04) also showed a significant increase in allostimulatory potential of TNF-α treated MDDCs. Increased allostimulatory capacity of TNF-α treated MDDCs may result from the increased number of MDDCs expressing CD86 (fig.IV.5). Seminal plasma did not have any effect on the allostimulatory capacity of TNF-α stimulated MDDCs and this phenomenon was observed in all 6 experiments (fig.IV.9).
MDDCs were pulsed with 200U/ml of TNF-\(\alpha\) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5\(\mu\)Ci of \(^{3}H\)-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. The graph (a) is a representative of 8 experiments and shows mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. The graph (b) shows mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard errors for 8 experiments. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below the graph shows P values comparing SI of TNF-\(\alpha\)-pulsed MDDCs with SI of control MDDCs (ie. not exposed to TNF-\(\alpha\)). \(P(\beta)=0.009\)
Fig. IV.9. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with TNF-α and two different concentrations of seminal plasma at day 5

MDDCs were pulsed with 200U/ml of TNF-α together with 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma (SPM) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [³H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. The graph (a) shows a representative for 6 experiments and show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The graph (b) shows mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard errors of 5 experiments. The table below graph (b) shows P values comparing ability of TNF-α/0.1% SPM-pulsed DCs or TNF-α/1% SPM-pulsed MDDCs to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells with that of MDDCs pulsed with TNF-α only. P values for allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs pulsed with both TNF-α and seminal plasma at different MDDC numbers (125-4000) and for that comparing the general trends of each curve (*italic*) are shown.
(a)

(b)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC No. per well</th>
<th>125</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>500</th>
<th>1000</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>4000</th>
<th>General trend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P values (vs. TNF-α only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF-α+0.1% SPM</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF-α+1% SPM</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P values (vs. TNF-α+0.1% SPM)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNF-α+1% SPM</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
When MDDCs were exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on the allostimulatory ability of these cells was no longer observed. These data suggest that TNF-α could block or overcome the suppressive effect of seminal plasma. This phenomenon is associated with phenotypic analyses which demonstrated the increased number of CD86^+ MDDCs upon TNF-α stimulation (fig.IV.5) and the presence of seminal plasma did not induce any alteration in the phenotype of TNF-α stimulated MDDCs (fig.IV.6). Pro-inflammatory cytokines, like TNF-α, play a role in activation and maturation of DCs. Mature DCs which are seen in the lymph node have higher ability to stimulate T cells compared with immature DCs in the mucosa.

Whether seminal plasma-induced suppression of the allostimulatory ability of MDDCs may be due to induction of anergic T cells was investigated. Fig.IV.10 demonstrates that IL-2, fresh MDDCs which have never been exposed to seminal plasma, or both together restored the proliferation of allogeneic T cells previously exposed to seminal plasma-treated MDDCs, indicating that the suppression of proliferation of allogeneic T cells induced by the seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs is unlikely to be due to the induction of anergic T cells.
Fig.IV.10. Recovery of cell proliferation

The MDDCs were pulsed with 1% seminal plasma overnight. Seminal plasma-pulsed MSDCs (right column) and MDDCs which were not exposed to seminal plasma (left column) were washed and an allogeneic MLR was set up next day and cultured for 3 days. Cells were washed, counted and secondary MLR was set up using $10^5$ cell/well from the first MLR as responder cells. Additives to the secondary MLR were i) 9 days-old MDDCs (1000 cells/well) from the same donor as that used in the first MLR ( ), ii) 20 units of IL-2 ( ), or iii) both MDDCs and IL-2 together ( ). As a control, nothing was added ( ). Cells were further cultivated for 3 days and washed, pulsed with 0.5μCi of [3H]-thymidine per well next day. The graph shows mean counts per minutes with standard errors of 3 experiments. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below the graph shows P values comparing allogeneic T cell proliferation with and without additives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC treatment</th>
<th>No SPM</th>
<th>1% SPM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000 DCs only</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-2 only</td>
<td>0.01*</td>
<td>0.008*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL-2+1000 DCs</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV.2.4. Identification of seminal components responsible for suppression of allostimulatory ability of MDDC

Lipids were extracted from seminal plasma using a reverse phase column as described in II.2.2. Allogeneic MLRs were set up using MDDCs which were pulsed overnight with lipid-extracted seminal plasma. By extracting lipids from seminal plasma, most of prostaglandins are eliminated from the seminal plasma (Kelly et al, 1997). Such experiments allowed examination of the role of prostaglandins in the alteration of seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs' function. Fig.IV.11 demonstrates that lipid extraction abrogated the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on MDDCs (previously seen in fig.IV.8). No significant differences between three groups of MDDCs (i.e. untreated, 0.1% lipid-extracted seminal plasma treated, and 1% lipid-extracted seminal plasma treated MDDCs) were detected (P>0.05). These findings suggest that lipids in seminal plasma could be responsible for suppression of allostimulatory ability.

To further identify whether PGE2, in particular, is responsible for suppressive effect of seminal plasma, MDDCs were pulsed with exogenous PGE2 instead of seminal plasma at day 5. It is known that prostaglandins which are present in human semen at higher concentrations than in peripheral blood (Kelly, 1997), have immunomodulatory effects including ability to induce tolerogenic DCs which are also known as type-3 polarised effector DCs (Steinbrink et al, 1997) and to induce type-2 effector DCs which have capacity to stimulate T cells efficiently Kalinstki et al, 1997; Kalinski et al, 1998). The average
Fig. IV.11. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with two different concentrations of lipid-extracted seminal plasma

MDDCs were pulsed with 0.1% or 1% lipid-extracted seminal plasma (SPM) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [3H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. The graph (a) shows a representative of 3 experiments and shows mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. The graph (b) shows mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard error for 3 experiments. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below graph (b) shows P values comparing SI of MDDCs pulsed with 0.1% or 1% lipid-extracted SPM with SI of control MDDCs (ie. untreated DCs).
concentration of PGE2 in seminal plasma is about 25μg/ml (=71μM) and that of 19-OH PGE2 is about 130μg/ml (=0.353mM) (Kelly et al, 1997). MDDCs were exposed to graded doses of PGE2 [0.0071μM-0.71μM which is equivalent to 0.001%-1% seminal plasma (fig.IV.12)]. Exogenous PGE2 did not induce the same effect on MDDCs as seminal plasma. PGE2 enhanced the allostimulatory ability of MDDCs (fig.IV.12a). When TNF-α was added together with PGE2 increased proliferation of allogeneic T cells was observed at a low number of MDDCs, but overall such an increment was not significant as indicated by P values evaluated from trend lines (fig.IV.12b). Neither 19-OH PGE2 (0.0353μM-3.53μM which is equivalent to 0.001%-1% seminal plasma) alone, nor 19-OH PGE2 together with TNF-α have significant effects on allostimulatory ability of MDDCs (fig.IV.13). In one experiment an increased allostimulatory ability of MDDCs pulsed with 3.53μM of 19-OH PGE2 was demonstrated (P=0.004; fig.IV.13a, left hand graph). These data suggests that although lipids in seminal plasma may play a role in the suppressive effect on allostimulatory potential of MDDCs, we failed to show the direct involvement of either PGE2 or 19-OH PGE2. It is possible that the suppressive effect of seminal plasma may be a result of combined activities of prostaglandins and other immunosuppressive components present in seminal plasma and hence exogenous prostaglandins do not have the same effect as seminal plasma on the allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs.
Fig. IV.12. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with PGE2

MDDCs were pulsed with graded doses of PGE2 (0.0071 μM-0.71 μM) alone (a) or together with 200U/ml of TNF-α (b) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [3H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Histograms on the left show mean stimulation indices (SI) with standard errors for 4 experiments. Graphs on the right are single representatives of 4 experiments and show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard error. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below IV.12a shows P values comparing SI of MDDCs pulsed with PGE2 to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells with that of control MDDCs (ie. untreated MDDCs). The table below IV.12b shows P values comparing SI of MDDCs pulsed with PGE2 together with TNF-α with SI of MDDCs pulsed with TNF-α only.
MDDCs were pulsed with graded doses of 19-OH PGE2 (0.0353μM-3.53μM) alone (a) or together with 200U/ml of TNF-α (b) overnight. Cells were washed next day, an allogeneic MLR was set up and cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [3H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs on the right show mean stimulation index (SI) with standard errors for 4 experiments. Graphs on the left are single representatives of 4 experiments and show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The tables below IV.13a show P values comparing SI of MDDCs pulsed with 19-OH PGE2 with SI of control MDDCs (ie. untreated MDDCs). The table below IV.13b shows P values comparing SI of MDDCs pulsed with 19-OH PGE2 together with TNF-α with SI of MDDCs pulsed with TNF-α only. P=0.04 (*)
IV.3. DISCUSSION

In this part of thesis, the effect of seminal plasma and/or TNF-α on the phenotype and functional ability to stimulate allogeneic T cells of the CD14+ monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs) was studied. It has been well established that DCs generated from monocytes using GM-CSF and IL-4 have the properties of immature DCs since they have a high capacity for endocytosis and low T cell stimulation function (Sallusto, et al., 1995; Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1994). To assess APC function, MDDCs were tested for their ability to stimulate proliferation of allogeneic T cells since DCs always carry allo-peptides.

TNF-α induced maturation of MDDCs as demonstrated by assessment of allostimulatory capacity of the cells (fig.IV.8). When TNF-α was present in the MDDC culture, the cells showed increased allostimulatory capacity compared with those which had not been treated with TNF-α. It has been shown that inflammatory cytokines and bacterial products can stimulate DC maturation and migration as has been demonstrated by systemic administration of TNF-α, IL-1β and IL-6 (Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1994; Sallusto et al., 1995; Jonuleit et al., 1997; Cumberbaten et al., 1990) or LPS (Cella, et al., 1997; Roake, et al., 1995) which induced depletion of DCs from non-lymphoid organs and migration into lymph nodes. DCs produce ceramides on stimulation by TNF-α, IL-1 and CD40L and ceramides can inhibit endocytosis which is a characteristic of immature DCs (Sallusto et al., 1996). IL-1 (Kobayash et al., 1989), IL-6 and TNF-α (Okamoto et al., 1989) activate NF-
κB. Mature DCs express high levels of the NF-κB family of transcriptional control proteins which regulate the expression of immune and inflammatory proteins. This, consequently, may induce further activation of DCs and may also induce migration of other immune cells to the site of inflammation. Phenotypic analyses showed that TNF-α significantly increased numbers of MDDCs expressing one of co-stimulatory molecules, CD86/B7.2 (fig.IV.6b) which are involved in presentation of antigen in the context of MHC class II to CD4 helper T cells. However, TNF-α did not increase expression of HLA-DR or decrease CD1a which are thought to occur during maturation of DCs.

Seminal plasma reduced the expression of co-stimulatory molecules on MDDCs (fig.IV.4). These data were supported by data obtained from functional ability of MDDCs to stimulate allogeneic T cells (fig.IV.7). Lower concentration of seminal plasma used in this study (0.1%) did not have any effect on neither the phenotype nor the allostimulatory function of MDDCs. However, the suppression did not appear to be due to induction of anergic T cells by seminal plasma since addition of IL-2, fresh MDDCs (i.e. not previously exposed to seminal plasma) or both together restored the proliferation of allogeneic T cells (fig.IV.10). Investigation of the cytokine production by seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs is required to further characterise the cells. Increased IL-10 and decreased IL-12 production may induce anergy (Groux et al, 1996; Van Parijs et al, 1997). When MDDCs were exposed to TNF-α, the suppressed allostimulatory ability of the cells which was induced by seminal plasma was no longer observed. There was not any significant difference in neither phenotypes nor allostimulatory potentials of
MDDCs. This data suggests that TNF-α counterbalances the effect of seminal plasma or vice versa. This phenomenon may be what is expected in vivo. The immature mucosal DCs do not recognise the seminal cells as foreign and semen does not induce immune response against itself. Pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNF-α may be present at a high level in semen of patients with genitourinary (GU) infections (Ramsey et al, 1995) and may act as a ‘danger’ signal (Matzinger, 1994). The results presented in this study suggest that under such circumstances the masked function of mucosal DCs as APCs which is induced by semen is blocked and hence, are ready to present the pathogens in the semen but whether the mucosal DCs recognise seminal components as foreign antigen in such scenarios requires to be investigated.

It has been shown that PGE2 and 19-OH PGE2 which are the main prostaglandin constituents of human seminal plasma induce Th2 type of responses (Kelly et al, 1997b; Kalinski, et al, 1997; Groux et al, 1996; Kalinski, et al, 1998) and may induce anergy (Groux et al, 1996; Mannie et al, 1995; Phipps and Scott, 1983; Goldings et al, 1986). The effect of seminal plasma on allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs was abrogated when the cells were treated with lipid-extracted seminal plasma (fig.IV.10) suggesting that lipids in semen may play a role in altering the function of the cells. To further identify whether PGE2 and/or 19-OH PGE2 are the key component responsible for the suppressive effect of seminal plasma, experiments using commercially available exogenous PGE2 and 19-OH PGE2 were performed. The results showed that exogenous prostaglandins do not have the same effect as seminal plasma (fig.IV.12 & 13). Our data was supported by studies by
Riesser and her colleagues who have shown that PGE2 alone activated DCs inducing IL-12 production in DCs (Rieser, et al, 1997). PGE2 affects development of immature DCs. The presence of PGE2 in immature DC culture results in induction of type 2-polarised effector DCs which produce reduced amounts of IL-12 and hence induces a bias towards Th2 type cytokine production in naïve T cells (Kalinski et al, 1997; Kalinski et al, 1998). These type 2-polarised effector DCs induced by PGE2 have enhanced stimulatory potential (Kalinski et al, 1998). The data from our study demonstrated an increased allostimulatory potential of MDDCs by PGE2 or 19-OH PGE2 although it was not statistically significant. Taken together it suggests that there are other factors in seminal plasma responsible for the functional changes of DCs, such as prostasome, polyamine, TGF-β and IL-10 although IL-10 present in semen at a very low concentration (Kelly, 1995; Alexander and Ansderson, 1985). Although prostaglandin by itself did not induce the suppressive effect in vitro it cannot be ruled out the possibility that the suppressive effect of seminal plasma may be the result of combined activity of prostaglandin and other components present in semen.

In conclusion the data from this chapter has shown that semen has immunomodulatory properties on MDDCs. Seminal plasma alone suppressed antigen presentation of MDDCs and this effect was abrogated when pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α were present. This has important implications. Seminal plasma has a role in protecting sperm from recognition in the female reproductive tract by possibly switching to Th2-type responses which may induce anergy or tolerance (Kelly et al, 1997a). However, when
high levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines are present in semen, as may be found in patients with GU infections (Ramsey et al, 1995), the cytokines and pathogens in semen act as ‘danger’ signals (Matzinger, 1994) and may induce activation of LCs in the mucosa resulting in enhanced ability to present antigens and to stimulate T cells in the lymph node. More importantly, under such circumstances seminal plasma may not play a protective role any longer. Possible mechanisms for the suppressive effect of seminal plasma and for the way in which TNF-α may overcome the suppressive effect of seminal plasma are summarised in fig.IV.14.

**Future work**

1. **Detection of IL-10 in seminal plasma**

   It has been shown that IL-10 has an immunomodulatory effect on immature DCs. IL-10 inhibits both IL-12 production in immature DCs (De Smedt et al, 1997; Kalinski et al, 1998) and the stimulatory ability of DCs, possibly by down-regulating expression of co-stimulation molecules (Chang et al, 1995; Willems et al, 1994; Ding et al, 1993) and thus inducing the development of a tolerogenic type of DC (Steinbrink et al, 1997). Since seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs had a suppressed capacity for allostimulation, the presence of IL-10 in semen needs to be studied.

2. **Measurement of level of prostaglandins in seminal plasma**

   Since prostaglandins (PGE2 and 19-OH PGE2) have been shown to have an immuno-suppressive effect (Kraan et al, 1995; Kelly et al, 1997) the amount of 19-OH PGE2 in individual semen samples needs to be measured. Also
individual lipids separated from seminal plasma using a reverse phase column could be eluted and used to treat DCs in the place of seminal plasma.

3. **Cytokine production by DCs and T cells**

Whether seminal plasma and/or TNF-α induces changes in cytokine production by DCs needs to be studied. Several studies have shown that DCs are important inducers of Th1 and Th2 cytokines in naïve T cells and such discrimination appears to be due to the level of IL-12 production rather than the ability to produce IL-12 (Macatonia *et al.*, 1993; Hilkens *et al.*, 1997; Ronchese *et al.*, 1994; Stumbles *et al.*, 1998; Snijders *et al.*, 1998). This is of importance since the different types of Th cells induce different immune responses. Th1-type cytokines promote cellular immunity and Th2-type cytokines support humoral immunity. The type of cytokines produced by T cells exposed to seminal plasma-pulsed DCs could be evaluated. Intracellular cytokine staining appeared to be not sensitive enough to detect IL-10 or IL-12 in DCs (data not shown). Other methods such as ELISA or bioassay could be used to measure cytokine production by DCs and by allogeneic T cells after stimulation with DCs.

4. **Antigen-uptake capacity of DCs**

To complete the functional studies on seminal plasma- and/or TNF-α-pulsed DCs, the antigen-uptake capacity of these cells needs to be assessed using fluorescien-conjugated dextran or nitroblue tetrazolium/zymosan granules, as has been previously described (Robinson *et al.*, 1999). Antigen-uptake by DCs is as important as stimulatory capacity of DCs in terms of DC function.
Fig. IV.14. Possible mechanisms for altered allostimulatory capacity of DCs which are exposed to seminal plasma and DCs which are exposed to TNF-α and for TNF-α overcoming the suppressive effect of seminal plasma

Seminal plasma alone reduced expression of co-stimulatory molecules on DCs and suppressed allostimulatory ability of DCs significantly (A). Semen contains immunosuppressive components [eg. Prostaglandins, prostasomes, polyamine and TGF-β (Alexander and Anderson, 1987; Kelly, 1995)]. TNF-α alone had the opposite effect on phenotyoe and function of DCs (B). TNF-α induces maturation of DCs since TNF-α induces ceramide release in DCs resulting in inhibition of endocytosis. TNF-α also induces secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines by DCs as a result of activation of NF-κB (Kobayash et al, 1989; Okamoto et al, 1989). Secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines may induce migration of other immune cells to the site of inflammation in vivo and may also induce further maturation of DCs themselves. TNF-α may overcome the suppressive effect of seminal plasma by inducing maturation of DCs as described above, however seminal plasma also counteracts with the effect of TNF-α. Thus, this counterbalancing may have resulted in unchanged phenotype and function of DCs (C).

(imDC: immature DC; mDC: mature DC; →: induction; ←→: interaction; →: secretion; ↑: increase; ↓: decrease; \(\uparrow\downarrow\): no change)
A

Proliferation suppressed

Allo. T cell → DC

CD1a↑↓
HLA-DR↑↓
B7.2/B7.2↓

Seminal plasma [immunosuppressive components (e.g., Prostaglandines, Prostasome, polyamine, TGF-β)]

B

Migration of immune cells to the site of inflammation

Pro-inflammatory cytokines released

Proliferation

Allo. T cell ↔ mDC

Pro-inflammatory cytokines released

HLA-DR↑↓
B7.2↑
B7.1↓
CD4↑↓
CD1a↓↑

C

Maturation

mDC

Ceramides released

Both cascades described in A and B

No changes in phenotype and function of DCs

im DC/LC

TNF-α

TNF-α + Seminal plasma
V

EFFECT OF SEMINAL PLASMA ON EXPRESSION
OF HIV-1 CO-RECEPTORS AND INFECTION WITH HIV-1

V.1. INTRODUCTION

Heterosexual transmission accounts for most cases of HIV-1 infection (Caceres et al., 1996; Mastro et al., 1996; Lee et al., 1996; AIDS epidemic update, December, 2000, http://www.unaids.org). Evidence that DCs could be involved in HIV transmission was deduced from the observation that HIV readily associates with DCs and caused formation of syncytia in vitro, as a result of DC-T cell fusion (Pope et al., 1995; Pope et al., 1994; Cameron et al., 1992). Infection in females may take place primarily in the vagina and cervix, particularly if HIV-susceptible inflammatory cells are present (Levy, 1993; Nuovo et al., 1993). The surface of the female genital tract is covered by layers of epithelial cells which provide a protective barrier for the underlying structures. The epithelial cells in the female genital tract are composed of columnar, squamous and transitional cells. The vagina and ectocervix which are most exposed to HIV inoculation are comprised of five distinct cell layers (fig.1.4; Witkin, 1993). In contrast, the endocervix and uterus are composed of a single layer of epithelial cells ('simple epithelium'). HIV-1 susceptible cells, Langerhans' cell, CD4+ T cells and macrophages are predominantly present in parabasal and basal layers of vagina and ectocervix (Johansson et
al, 1999; Poppe et al, 1998; Morris et al, 1983). For sexually transmitted
diseases (STDs) including HIV infection, mucosal integrity plays an obvious
and important role in transmission. Transmission of HIV would be
particularly likely if there are venereal diseases with open lesions and many
inflammatory cells present due to other STDs that may provide a portal for
HIV entry (Wasserheit, 1992; Dickerson et al, 1996; Plummer, 1998; Cohen,
1998; Gray et al, 1999).

LCs in the mucosal epithelium may be the first cells to become infected after
mucosal exposure to HIV-1 as has been shown in studies using the rhesus
macaque model of SIV (Spira et al, 1996; Joag et al, 1997; Blauvelt et al,
1997; Zambruno et al, 1995; Miller and Hu, 1999) and using skin explants
(Reece et al, 1998). It has also been observed that SIV can be efficiently
transferred to lymph nodes within two days of vaginal inoculation of the virus
in rhesus macaques (Joag et al, 1997; Spira et al, 1996). HIV-1-carrying DCs
migrate to the draining lymph node where interaction with T cells may
establish productive infection, and ultimately lead to systemic spread of HIV-
1. Animal studies using the SIV-macaque model demonstrated that DC-T cell
clusters are a major site of viral replication (Hu et al, 1999).

Immature DCs express CCR5, CCR2 and CCR3 (Rubbert et al, 1998; Sallusto
et al, 1998; Sozzani et al, 1998; Sallusto and Lanzaveccheia, 1999) which are
used as co-receptors by R5 strains of HIV-1 although CCR2 and CCR3 usage
by this virus is less common than CCR5. More importantly, freshly isolated
LCs express functional CCR5 (Zaitseva et al, 1997) as well as CD4 (Patterson
et al., 1995, Wright-Browne et al., 1997; Lee et al., 1999) allowing entry of R5 strains of the virus. Upon maturation of DCs, expression of CXCR4 is induced allowing potential entry of X4 strains of virus (Zaitseva et al., 1997; Sallusto et al., 1998; Canque et al., 1999) and expression of CCR5 is down-regulated (Sallusto et al., 1998). Expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on CD4^ lymphocytes is regulated by cytokines. CCR5 expression on CD4^ cell populations is up-regulated by type 1 cytokines such as IFN-γ and IL-2 and down-regulated by type 2 cytokines such as IL-10 (Patterson et al., 1999). Expression of CXCR4 on DCs is up-regulated by IL-4 (Jourdan et al., 1998) and TGF-β and down-regulated by IFN-α, IFN-β and IFN-γ (Zoeteweij et al., 1998). Therefore, an increase in type 2 cytokine production or lack of type 1 cytokine production, which can occur during HIV infection (Maggi et al., 1994; Barcellini et al., 1994; Jason et al., 1995; Meroni et al., 1996; Stylianou et al., 1999), may promote infection of DCs with X4 strains of virus. Expression of CXCR4 (Canque et al., 1999; Sallusto et al., 1998; Zaitseva et al., 1997) and CCR7 (Sallusto et al., 1999; Dieu-Nosjean et al., 1999; Sallusto et al., 1998; Yanagihara et al., 1998) whose natural ligands (SDF-1 for CXCR4; SLC and ELC for CCR7) are produced in lymphoid organs, is increased on mature DCs, facilitating migration of DCs to the lymph node where DC-T cell interaction occurs. It has been demonstrated that productive infection of DCs with HIV and the ability of DCs to capture virus are mediated through separate pathways (Blauvelt et al., 1997). Productive infection of DC is CD4-, CCR5- and CXCR4-dependent, whereas capture of virus is independent of CD4, CCR5 and CXCR4 and is facilitated by the unique dendritic morphology of DCs. A newly identified DC-specific ICAM-3 receptor, DC-SIGN which is
abundantly expressed by DCs present in the mucosa, was also shown to bind to the HIV-1 gp120 and hence to be involved in efficient capture of HIV-1. Furthermore, an interaction between DC-SIGN and ICAM-3 facilitates the infection of T cells (Geijtenbeek et al, 2000).

In the previous chapter, the effect of seminal plasma on function and phenotype of non HIV-infected DCs was discussed. This part of thesis describes in vitro-infection of DCs with HIV-1, the expression of HIV-1 co-receptors on seminal plasma pulsed-DCs, which may influence infection of the cells with HIV-1 and finally the effect of seminal plasma on in vitro-infection of DCs. The allostimulatory capacity of in vitro-HIV-1 infected DCs is also described. A pool of seminal plasma as described in II.2.6 was again used to pulse DCs in this chapter. A summary of experiments performed in this part of thesis is illustrated in fig.V.1.

V.2. RESULTS

Data from allogeneic mixed lymphocyte reactions (MLRs) was presented in the form of mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors (SE) for triplicates for single representatives and in the form of mean stimulation indices (SI) with SE for summary of all experiments. Data from flow cytometric analyses were presented in the form of mean fluorescence intensity (MFI) with SE. The live MDDC population was gated and designated as R1 (fig.V.2a, 2e, 2i) and expression of HIV-1 co-receptors on MDDCs was analysed within this population. MFI of isotype matched control antibody was
CD14+ monocytes were positively selected from HIV-negative PBMCs using CD14 MicroBeads (II.2.4). CD14+ monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs) were generated in the presence of GM-CSF and IL-4 (II.2.5). After 5 days of culture cells were pulsed with two different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma (SPM) and/or HIV-1 viral isolates (II.6.3). In some experiments MDDCs were pulsed with HIV-positive SPM. HIV-1 infected MDDCs were assessed for proviral DNA (II.5.2), p24 protein production (II.6.2) and allogeneic capacity (II.2.7). HIV-negative SPM-pulsed DCs were assessed for expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 (II.3.1).
not subtracted from MFI of CCR5 or CXCR4 expression since we are comparing levels of CCR5 or CXCR4 expression on MDDCs which were treated differently (e.g. untreated MDDCs vs. seminal plasma and/or TNF-α-treated MDDCs or between two different concentration of seminal plasma-treated MDDCs). The percentages of positive cells were not assessed since specific antibody binding showed a slight shift compared with isotype matched antibody binding. The degree of increase or decrease in levels of expression was calculated using equation 2 described in II.7. Single representatives of each flow cytometry profile are also shown (fig.V.2a-2c, 2e-2g, 2i-2k).

V.2.1. Surface expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on CD14<sup>+</sup>-monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs)

Whether seminal plasma and/or TNF-α influenced expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on the MDDC surface was assessed by flow cytometry. MDDCs were derived from HIV-negative PBMCs (II.2.5). MDDCs were pulsed overnight with two different concentrations of seminal plasma pool (II.2.2) and/or 200U/ml (10<sup>6</sup> cells/ml) of TNF-α. MDDCs were washed in 1% FCS/PBS twice before staining. Staining procedures are as described in II.3 except that incubations were at room temperature.

MDDCs expressed both CCR5 and CXCR4 [fig.V.2d, green bars; P=0.06 for CCR5 and P=0.02 for CXCR4 compared with isotype matched control antibody binding (orange bars)]. Expression of CCR5 on MDDCs was decreased by seminal plasma, TNF-α and both seminal plasma and TNF-α although such a decrease was not statistically significant. P values comparing
the level of CCR5 expression on untreated MDDCs and 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs were >0.05. CCR5 expression was decreased on both 0.1% and 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs (fig.V.2b and fig.V.2d). The difference in the MFI of CCR5 expression between control MDDCs and 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs was 5.9±2.1 which is 35.3%(±6.7) decrease, and that between control MDDCs and 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs was 8.9±2.9 which is 50.3%(±8.0) decrease. Similar results were obtained when MDDCs were exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma. The level of CCR5 expression was decreased by seminal plasma but not statistically significantly (fig.V.2f and fig.V.2h). TNF-α alone also decreased the level of CCR5 expression on MDDCs when compared with that seen on untreated MDDCs by MFI of 7.4±6.0 (fig.V.2j and fig.V.2i).

Expression of CXCR4 was influenced by seminal plasma or TNF-α to a greater extent than CCR5. Both 0.1% and 1% seminal plasma increased the level of CXCR4 expression on MDDCs by MFI of 11.3±4.5 which is 107.0%(±55.9) increase (P=0.2) and by MFI of 8.0±4.1 which is 73.7%(±50.2) increase (P=0.4) compared with that seen on untreated MDDCs (fig.V.2d). CXCR4 expression appears to be decreased on MDDCs pulsed with 1% seminal plasma compared with that seen on 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs but not significantly (P=0.6; fig.V.2d). Fig.V.2g and fig.V.2h show that MDDCs exposed to both TNF-α and seminal plasma display significantly increased expression of CXCR4. The differences in MFI of CXCR4 between MDDCs exposed to TNF-α and MDDCs exposed to both TNF-α and 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma were 61.0±11.2 [166.6%(±37.0) increase; P=0.006] and
Fig. V.2. Expression of CCR5 and CXCR4 on HIV-negative seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs.

MDDCs were pulsed with two different concentrations (0.1%, 1%) of HIV-negative SPM or TNF-α or both overnight. Cells were washed next day and stained with anti-CCR5 antibody or anti-CXCR4 antibody as described in II.3.1. The graphs show expression of CCR5 or CXCR4 in MDDC population (R1 in fig. V.3a, V.3e, V.3i) which was pulsed with seminal plasma (a)-(d), was pulsed with both seminal plasma and TNF-α (e)-(h), and was pulsed with TNF-α only (i)-(l). Expression of HIV coreceptors on MDDCs was analysed within this population. (a), (e), and (i): single representatives of dot plot showing a MDDC population; (b), (f), and (j): single representatives of histogram showing expression of CCR5; (c), (g), and (k): single representatives of histogram showing expression of CXCR4; (d), (h), and (l): mean fluorescence intensities (MFI) of CCR5 or CXCR4 expression in a MDDC population with standard errors for 8 and 7 experiments for CCR5 and CXCR4, respectively (d), for 5 experiments for both CCR5 and CXCR4 [(h) and (i)]. P=0.02 (*) comparing MFI of isotype matched control antibody with MFI of CXCR4 expressed on control MDDCs; P=0.02 (•) comparing MFI of isotype matched control antibody with MFI of CXCR4 expressed on TNF-α-pulsed MDDCs; P=0.006 ($) comparing MFI of CXCR4 expressed on TNF-α-pulsed MDDCs with that on MDDCs exposed to both TNF-α and 0.1% seminal plasma; P=0.02 (#) comparing MFI of CXCR4 expressed on TNF-α-pulsed MDDCs with that on MDDCs exposed to both TNF-α and 1% seminal plasma. Statistical method employed was ‘independent-sample T test’ using SPSS 10.0 software.
55.7±21.51 [82.9%(±84.5) increase; P=0.02], respectively. TNF-α alone also increased the level of CXCR4 expression on MDDCs by MFI of 16.3±2.2, 142.2%(±46.8) increase, although such an increase was not statistically significant (fig.V.2k and fig.V.2l; P=0.2).

V.2.2. Assessment of MDDC infection with HIV-1

HIV-negative seminal plasma pulsed-MDDCs and control MDDCs (i.e. untreated MDDCs) were exposed to different strains of HIV (table II.2) as described in II.6.3. Infection of MDDCs with HIV-1 was assessed using two different methods: i) a viral DNA assay using HIV-1 specific env primers and β-globin primers as a positive control, and ii) a p24 protein ELISA for measurement of p24 antigen levels in culture supernatants (frozen and thawed).

Fig.V.3 shows that MDDCs could be infected with virus in vitro. Prior to adding to MDDC culture the virus was treated with DNase and this removed DNA from the viral stock as demonstrated by viral DNA assay (fig.V.3d). Amplification of HIV env DNA demonstrated that without seminal plasma (Lane B) MDDCs were infected with JRCSF virus [R5 strain (fig.V.3a] and with evidence of a much lower level of infection with PE106 virus [R5/X4 strain (fig.V.3b)]. Infection with JW5 virus [X4 strain (fig.V.3c)] was not observed. Infection with JRCSF virus was also detected in MDDCs pulsed with 0.1% seminal plasma (fig.V.3a, Lane C) but not in MDDCs pulsed with 1% seminal plasma (fig.V.3a, Lane D). When MDDCs were pulsed with 1% seminal plasma the level of CCR5 expression decreased, as previously
Fig. V.3. Viral DNA detection in MDDCs infected with HIV-1 in vitro.

0.1% or 1% seminal plasma together with p24 concentration of 0.1ng/ml of JRCSF (a), PE106 (b) or JW5 (c) viruses were added to MDDC cultures. Virus was pre-treated with DNase to degrade DNA if present in the virus stocks. Viral DNA (env) was not detected in DNase treated virus (d). OM10.1 cells were used as a positive control. Following exposure cells were washed three times and DNA was extracted next day using Tri Reagent™: Uninfected MDDCs (Lane A), MDDCs infected with virus without seminal plasma (Lane B), MDDCs infected with virus in the presence of 0.1% seminal plasma (Lane C) and MDDCs infected with virus in the presence of 1% seminal plasma (Lane D). Viral DNA was assessed by a nested PCR and visualised on 1.5% agarose gel in the presence of ethidium bromide. Lane 1 represents β-globin gene amplification (109 bp) and lane 2 represents HIV-1 env gene amplification (304 bp). Marker (M) used in (a) is 50 bp and (b), (c) and (d) is 100 bp. Figure shows a representative of 3 experiments (sample 1).
(b) PE106 virus

300 bp 200 bp 100 bp

Sample 2 Sample 3

+ + + + + + + ++

A

1 2 1 2 1 2

M

300 bp

HIV-1 env gene (304 bp)

β-globin gene (109 bp)

(c) JW5 virus

300 bp 200 bp 100 bp

Sample 2 Sample 3

+ + + + + + + +

A

1 2 1 2 1 2

M

300 bp

HIV-1 env gene (304 bp)

β-globin gene (109 bp)
described (fig.V.2d). The viral DNA assay demonstrated that JRCSF virus was unable to infect 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs and this may be due to reduced levels of CCR5 expression on MDDCs. Infection with PE106 virus was greatly enhanced when 0.1% seminal plasma was added (fig.V.3b, Lane C) and was decreased when 1% seminal plasma was added (fig.V.3b, Lane D) to the culture. Detectable levels of infection with JW5 virus were observed only when 0.1% seminal plasma was present in the culture (fig.V.3c; Lane C). Although MDDCs expressed CXCR4 (fig.V.2d) the level of CXCR4 expression on these untreated MDDCs may not be sufficient for entry of X4 strain of virus. However, 0.1% seminal plasma pulsed MDDCs displayed increased levels of CXCR4 expression, which may have enhanced entry of X4 strain of virus. Infections with PE106 virus and JW5 virus were not detected in MDDCs pulsed with 1% seminal plasma (fig.V.3b and fig.V.3c). Although statistical analyses on the level of CXCR4 expression on 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs showed no significant difference from 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs, failure in infecting 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs suggests that the level of CXCR4 expression on these cells may not be sufficient for entry of X4 strains of virus as seen in control MDDCs (the level of CXCR4 expression on 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs was not significantly different from control MDDCs).

p24 levels in supernatants of HIV-1 infected MDDC cultures which were collected at different time points during the cultivation, were measured by ELISA. p24 protein in the supernatants was present at a very low concentration or below the detection limit (table V.1). For MDDC sample 1 it
Table V.1. p24 protein production by MDDCs infected with HIV-1 *in vitro*

Seminal plasma and HIV-1 (final concentration of 0.1ng/ml) were added to MDDCs, cells were washed three times and resuspended in 1ml of DC medium. Levels of p24 protein in the supernatants were collected at different time points and were measured by ELISA (II.6.2). (LDL=Lower than Detection Limit; detection limit=1ng/ml)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample description</th>
<th>Day 2</th>
<th>Day 5</th>
<th>Day 6</th>
<th>p24 protein concentration (ng/ml)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sample 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRC SF only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRC SF + 0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRC SF + 1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td>LDL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106 only</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106 + 0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106 + 1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 only</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 + 0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 + 1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>Day 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
appears that a lower concentration of seminal plasma (0.1%) enhanced infection of MDDCs with R5 strains of HIV-1 (day 5 and day 6), however it was not the case for MDDC sample 2 and 3. This data suggests that productive infection of these cells with HIV-1 in this system was not efficient enough to release measurable amount of p24 by ELISA or our ELISA system is not sensitive enough. Therefore, supernatants from the allogeneic MLR using HIV-1 infected MDDCs were collected and p24 levels in the supernatants were measured by ELISA. Amounts of p24 protein in the allogeneic MLR supernatants were still lower than detection limit, 0.0316ng/ml (table V.2).

Virus in seminal plasma from HIV+ individuals was capable of infecting MDDCs since viral DNA was detected in cells which were incubated with seminal plasma from HIV+ patients (fig.V.4). Fig.V.4a shows viral DNA detection in MDDCs pulsed overnight with seminal plasma from a HIV+ patient whose viral load in seminal plasma was 2,000 copies/ml (patient 9; refer table III.1 in chapter III for patient details). Fig.V.4b shows viral DNA detection in MDDCs pulsed with seminal plasma from a HIV+ patient whose viral load in seminal plasma was 68,000 copies/ml (patient 10; refer table III.1 in chapter III for patient details). When MDDCs were pulsed with seminal plasma with a viral load of 2,000 copies/ml, viral DNA was detected in cells pulsed with 1% seminal plasma (equivalent to 20 copies of virus), but not in cells pulsed with 0.1% seminal plasma (equivalent to 2 copies of virus) (fig.V.4a). In contrast, when seminal plasma which has a higher viral load (68,000 copies/ml) was used to pulse MDDCs viral DNA was detected in MDDC populations pulsed with both 0.1% (equivalent to 68 copies of virus)
Table V.2. p24 protein production by allogeneic MLRs using MDDCs infected with HIV-1 \textit{in vitro}

Final concentrations of 0.1ng/ml of virus and seminal plasma (0%, 0.1%, 1%) were added to MDDC cultures. Cells were washed three times and an allogeneic MLR was set up (10^5 responder cells/well) next day. At day 4, supernatants were collected and p24 protein concentrations were measured by ELISA (II.6.2). (LDL=Lower than Detection Limit; detection limit=0.0316ng/ml)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample description</th>
<th>DC No. per well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106 only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106+0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106+1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRCSF only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRCSF+0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JRCSF+1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106 only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106+0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE106+1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sample 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 only</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. V.4. Viral DNA assay by nested PCR

HIV-negative MDDCs were incubated with 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma (SPM) from HIV+ patients whose viral load in SPM was 2,000 copies/ml (a) or 68,000 copies/ml (b) overnight. DNA from the cells was extracted after further 2 days of incubation, using Tri-reagent™. Viral DNA was assessed by a nested PCR and visualised on 1.5% agarose gel in the presence of ethidium bromide. Lane 1 represents β-globin gene amplification (109 bp) and lane 2 represents HIV-1 env gene amplification (304 bp). Marker (M) used in (a) is 50 bp and in (b) is 100 bp.
and 1% (equivalent to 680 copies of virus) seminal plasma (fig.V.4b). This data suggests that viral strains present in seminal plasma can infect DCs efficiently. Final viral concentrations of as little as 20 copies/ml was sufficient to infect these cells and the infection could be detected by a nested PCR. An allogeneic MLR was set up using MDDCs that were pulsed with seminal plasma from patient 10. Despite the fact that viral DNA was detected in MDDCs which were in vitro-infected with virus present in seminal plasma, levels of p24 in supernatants of allogeneic MLR were lower than detection limit (0.0316ng/ml; table V.3). This data suggests that HIV enters MDDCs, with reverse transcription of viral RNA to DNA (as demonstrated by PCR; fig.V.4) but with little or no productive replication of virus and hence may not have transmitted virus to allogeneic T cells.

V.2.3. Assessment of antigen presenting function of HIV-1 infected CD14^-monocyte-derived DCs (MDDCs)

Antigen presenting function of MDDCs which were infected with virus was assessed by allogeneic MLRs. After 5 days of culture MDDCs were pulsed with virus exhibiting different cellular tropism (JRCSF: CCR5-utilising strain; PE106: CCR5 and CXCR4-utilising strain; JW5: CXCR4-utilising strain) overnight. Cells were washed and were used to stimulate allogeneic T cells. Cells were cultured for further 4 days. The data showed that infection with virus, as confirmed by PCR (fig.V.3) enhanced allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs but not significantly (fig.V.5). It appears that JW5 virus has the least effect on the allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs (fig.V.5). This may be associated with the level of infection of MDDCs. Viral DNA assay
Table V.3. p24 protein production by allogeneic MLR using MDDCs exposed to HIV-1+ seminal plasma

Seminal plasma (0%, 0.1%, 1%) from patient 10 (HIV-1 viral load in seminal plasma was 68,000 copies/ml) was added to MDDC cultur. Cells were washed three times and an allogeneic MLR was set up (10^5 responder cells/well) next day. At day 4, supernatants were collected and p24 protein concentration was measured by ELISA (II.6.2) (LDL=Lower than Detection Limit; detection limit is 0.0316ng/ml)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample description</th>
<th>DC No. per well</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1% seminal plasma</td>
<td>LDL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fig. V.5. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with virus with different cellular tropism.

MDDCs were pulsed with virus exhibiting different cellular tropism (JRCSF: CCR5-utilising strain; PE106: CCR5 and CXCR4-utilising strain; JW5: CXCR4-utilising strain) overnight. Cells were washed and an allogeneic MLR was set up next day using $10^5$ responder cells per well. Cells were cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with $0.5\mu$Ci of $[^3]$H-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs (a), (b), and (c) show mean count per minute (CPM) with standard errors of each experiment. Graph (d) shows mean stimulation index (SI) of 3 experiments with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below the graphs shows P values comparing ability of MDDCs which were exposed to virus to stimulate allogeneic T cells with that of control MDDCs. P values comparing allostimulatory ability of DCs exposed to different strains of virus are also shown. P values were evaluated from mean SI of 3 experiments and standard errors. Statistical analysis method employed was ‘independent sample T test’ and performed using a SPSS 10.0 software. SI was calculated by dividing mean CPM of background (ie. no DC) from mean CPM of each DC number (equation 1 in II.7).
(a) (b)

(c) (d)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC No. per well</th>
<th>125</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>500</th>
<th>1000</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>4000</th>
<th>8000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P values (vs. control)</td>
<td>JRCSF</td>
<td>PE106</td>
<td>JW5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P values (vs. JRCSF virus)</td>
<td>PE106</td>
<td>JW5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
demonstrated undetectable level of JW5 virus DNA by PCR (fig.V.3c, lane B). It was expected that antigen-carrying DCs would undergo maturation and hence their allostimulatory function would be enhanced. Therefore, it is not surprising that JW5 virus exposed-MDDCs which did not have detectable levels of viral DNA, displayed allostimulatory potentials similar to those of control MDDCs (i.e. unexposed to virus; fig.V.5).

Antigen presenting function of MDDCs exposed to both virus and seminal plasma was assessed to determine whether presence of virus abolished the suppressed allostimulatory capacity of seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs (chapter IV) or whether seminal plasma altered the allostimulatory potentials of antigen-carrying DCs. First of all, two experiments demonstrated a significantly increased allostimulatory ability of JRCSF virus-infected MDDCs when compared with that of uninfected control MDDCs (fig.V.6a and fig.V.6c, P=0.000 and P=0.001, respectively). These two experiments also demonstrated a decreased allostimulatory ability of MDDCs when exposed to JRCSF virus in the presence of 1% seminal plasma compared with that of MDDCs exposed to virus only (P=0.007 for fig.V.6a and P=0.001 for fig.V.6c). When the allostimulatory potential of MDDCs exposed to both JRCSF virus and 1% seminal plasma was compared with that of control MDDCs (i.e. not exposed to either seminal plasma or virus) the suppressive effect of seminal plasma was not observed (fig.V.6a and fig.V.6c, P=0.8 and P=0.06, respectively). The summary of all experiments showed a tendency of increased allostimulatory potentials when MDDCs were exposed to virus (without seminal plasma and with 0.1% seminal plasma) although it was not
Fig. V.6. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with JRCSF virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

MDDCs were pulsed with JRCSF virus (CCR5-utilising strain) alone or together with 0.1% or 1% HIV-negative seminal plasma overnight. Cells were washed and allogeneic MLRs were set up next day using $10^5$ responder cells per well. Cells were cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5µCi of $[^3]H$-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs (a), (b), and (c) show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. Graphs (d) shows mean stimulation index (SI) of 3 experiments with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below graph (d) shows P values comparing ability of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were exposed to 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma to stimulate allogeneic T cells with that of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were not exposed to seminal plasma or with that of uninfected MDDCs. Also, P values comparing allostimulatory ability of MDDCs exposed to different concentrations of seminal plasma were shown. Statistical analyses method employed was ‘Independent sample T test’ and were performed using a SPSS 10.0 software. SI was calculated by dividing mean CPM of background (ie. no MDDC) from mean CPM of each MDDC number (equation 1 described in II.7). Refer the text for statistical analyses on individual experiment presented in fig.V.6a-fig.V.6c.
(a) and (b) show the relationship between DC number per well and Mean CPM for different conditions. (c) and (d) present similar data for Mean SI.

The table below summarizes the P values for various comparisons:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DC No. per well</th>
<th>JRCFSF only</th>
<th>JRCFSF+0.1% SPM</th>
<th>JRCFSF+1% SPM</th>
<th>JRCFSF+1% SPM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4000</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8000</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

P values (vs. control):
- JRCFSF only: 0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0.5, 0.2, 0.3, 0.6
- JRCFSF+0.1% SPM: 0.3, 0.4, 0.3, 0.4, 0.3, 0.3, 0.5
- JRCFSF+1% SPM: 0.3, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.4, 0.5, 0.9

P values (vs. JRCFSF only):
- JRCFSF+0.1% SPM: 0.8, 1.0, 0.9, 0.9, 0.9, 0.8, 0.8
- JRCFSF+1% SPM: 0.6, 0.5, 0.6, 0.6, 0.4, 0.4, 0.7

P values (vs. JRCFSF+0.1% SPM):
- JRCFSF+1% SPM: 0.4, 0.5, 0.5, 0.4, 0.4, 0.4, 0.6
statistically significant (fig.V.6d). Neither such increases nor significant suppression in the allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs were not seen when cells were exposed to both 1% seminal plasma and virus when compared with control MDDCs (fig.V.6d). These data were correlated with the data obtained from viral DNA assay (fig.V.3a) which showed detectable level of viral DNA in both MDDCs exposed to virus only and MDDCs exposed to virus together with 0.1% seminal plasma, but not in MDDCs exposed to virus and 1% seminal plasma. Taken together the data suggests that allostimulatory potentials of MDDCs which are infected with HIV were related to the level of infection with HIV. Although MDDCs exposed to JRCsf virus in the presence of 1% seminal plasma did not have detectable level of viral DNA these cells did not show the seminal plasma-induced suppressed allostimulatory capacity which was previously seen in chapter IV. This may be due to infection of allogeneic T cells with HIV which were captured by or attached to MDDCs. This can be possible as MDDCs has 'dendritic' morphology and also 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs express CD4 (fig.IV.4 in chapter IV).

Similar results were obtained when PE106 virus infected MDDCs or JW5 virus infected MDDCs were used (fig.V.7 and fig.V.8). Two experiments showed a significant increase in allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs infected with PE106 virus compared with that of control MDDCs (fig.V.7a and fig.V.7b, P=0.01 and P=0.000, respectively). All three experiments demonstrated highest allostimulatory potential of MDDCs which were infected with PE106 in the presence of 0.1% seminal plasma. This was, again, correlated with data obtained from viral DNA assay showing high level of
Fig. V.7. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with PE106 virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

MDDCs were pulsed with PE106 virus (both CCR5 and CXCR4-utilising strain) alone or together with 0.1% or 1% HIV-negative seminal plasma overnight. Cells were washed and allogeneic MLRs were set up next day using $10^5$ responder cells per well. Cells were cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with $0.5\mu$Ci of $[^3]$H-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs (a), (b), and (c) show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. Graphs (d) shows mean stimulation index (SI) of 3 experiments with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below graph (d) shows P values comparing ability of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were exposed to 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma to stimulate allogeneic T cells with that of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were not exposed to seminal plasma or with that of uninfected MDDCs. Also, P values comparing allostimulatory ability of MDDCs exposed to different concentrations of seminal plasma were shown. Statistical analyses method employed was 'Independent sample T test' and were performed using a SPSS 10.0 software. SI was calculated by dividing mean CPM of background (ie. no MDDC) from mean CPM of each MDDC number (equation 1 described in II.7). Refer the text for statistical analyses on individual experiment presented in fig.V.7a-fig.V.7c.
Fig. V.8. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs infected with JW5 virus and/or pulsed with different concentrations of HIV-negative seminal plasma

MDDCs were pulsed with JW5 virus (CXCR4-utilising strain) alone or together with 0.1% or 1% HIV-negative seminal plasma overnight. Cells were washed and allogeneic MLRs were set up next day using 10^5 responder cells per well. Cells were cultured for further 4 days. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [³H]-thymidine per well at day 4 and harvested at day 5. Graphs (a), (b), and (c) show mean counts per minute (CPM) with standard errors. Graphs (d) shows mean stimulation index (SI) of 3 experiments with standard errors. Each experiment was set up in triplicate. The table below graph (d) shows P values comparing ability of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were exposed to 0.1% or 1% seminal plasma to stimulate allogeneic T cells with that of HIV-1 infected MDDCs which were not exposed to seminal plasma or with that of uninfected MDDCs. Also, P values comparing allostimulatory ability of MDDCs exposed to different concentrations of seminal plasma were shown. Statistical analyses method employed was 'Independent sample T test' and were performed using a SPSS 10.0 software. SI was calculated by dividing mean CPM of background (ie. no MDDC) from mean CPM of each MDDC number (equation 1 described in II.7). Refer the text for statistical analyses on individual experiment presented in fig.V.8a-fig.V.8c.
Table 1: P values for DC No. per well

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>125</th>
<th>250</th>
<th>500</th>
<th>1000</th>
<th>2000</th>
<th>4000</th>
<th>8000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>P values</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vs. control)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5 only</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+0.1% SPM</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+1% SPM</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P values</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vs. JW5 only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+0.1% SPM</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+1% SPM</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P values</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vs. JW5+0.1% SPM)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JW5+1% SPM</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
infection with PE106 as determined by PCR. The summary of all three experiments using MDDCs infected with PE106 virus (fig.V.7d) or using MDDCs infected with JW5 virus (fig.V.8d) showed the enhanced allostimulatory potentials of virus infected MDDCs and further enhanced with 0.1% seminal plasma. Furthermore, MDDCs exposed to both 1% seminal plasma and virus exhibited higher allostimulatory capacity compared with control MDDCs. Such enhancement was associated with infection of the cells with HIV although viral DNA level was considerably low as demonstrated by PCR (fig.V.3). A decreased allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs was demonstrated when cells were pulsed with 1% seminal plasma from a HIV+ patient with viral load of 2,000 copies/ml (fig.V.9a; P=0.03). Seminal plasma from a patient with viral load of 68,000 copies/ml also decreased the allostimulatory function of MDDCs but not significantly (fig.V.9b, P=0.07).

These data together with data obtained from viral DNA assay suggest that allostimulatory capacity of MDDCs are associated with level of infection with HIV. The suppressive effect of seminal plasma was not observed when the cells were exposed to virus at the same time although viral DNA assay could not detect viral DNA in these cells suggesting that virus may be captured by MDDCs or may attach to the cells which can infect and hence activate allogeneic T cells. Alternatively a very low infection level of MDDCs by HIV may be sufficient to activate and mature MDDCs and hence induces an enhanced allostimulatory capacity of these cells.
Fig.V.9. Allogeneic MLR with MDDCs pulsed with seminal plasma from HIV+ patients

0.1% or 1% seminal plasma (SPM) from HIV+ patients was added to the MDDC culture. Cells were washed next day and an allogeneic MLR was set up using 10^5 responder cells per well. Cells were pulsed with 0.5μCi of [3H]-thymidine per well next day. The graphs show mean counts per minute (CPM) of triplicate with standard errors. (a) seminal plasma from patient 9 (viral load in seminal plasma was 2,000 copies/ml). (b) seminal plasma from patient 10 (viral load in seminal plasma was 68,000 copies/ml). Statistical analysis method employed was ‘Independent sample T test’ and were performed using a SPSS 10.0 software. P=0.03 (*) compared with allostimulatory capacity of control MDDCs (ie. untreated).
V.3. DISCUSSION

In this chapter the effects of seminal plasma on HIV-1 co-receptor expression on CD14⁺ monocyte-derived dendritic cells, on HIV-1 infection of these cells, and on the antigen presentation function of HIV-1-infected MDDCs were investigated.

MDDCs expressed both primary HIV-1 co-receptors. Seminal plasma induced changes in surface expression of CCR5 and CXCR4. The level of CXCR4 expression on MDDCs was increased by seminal plasma whereas the level of CCR5 expression decreased (fig.V.2a-2d). This data suggests that seminal plasma may favour the infection of DCs with X4 strains of HIV-1. This was confirmed by in vitro-infection studies. Infection with X4 strain (JW5 virus; fig.V.3c) was only observed in 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs and infection with the R5/X4 strain [PE106 virus (fig.V.3b)] was enhanced when 0.1% seminal plasma was present. On the other hand infection with R5 strain (JRCSF) was detected in both untreated and 0.1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs (fig.V.3b), but not in MDDCs pulsed with 1% seminal plasma. Although the level of CXCR4 expression on 1% seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs, which was higher than on untreated MDDCs, was not significantly decreased compared with that on 0.1% seminal plasma no detectable level of infection of MDDCs by JW5 virus was observed. This suggests that seminal plasma may also inhibit entry of virus without decreasing CXCR4 expression. Alternatively such a small decrease may be sufficient to stop the X4 strains of virus entry. Our data, however, does not support the observation that R5
strains of virus are transmitted preferentially via sexual contact. It is possible that LC in the mucosa may not be the first target of viral infection as reported by others previously (Zhang et al, 1999).

Despite the fact that the same amount of virus (1ng/ml of p24 protein, $10^6$ MDDCs/ml) was used to infect MDDCs, JRCSF virus infected MDDCs more efficiently than PE106 as was demonstrated by viral DNA assays [fig.V.3a and fig.V.3b, Lane B (virus only)]. This may be because ‘dual’ tropic strains like PE106 virus are actually mixed populations of both R5 and X4 quasispecies and PE106 may contain less of the R5 strain. Seminal plasma samples from two HIV+ patients were also used to infect MDDCs and the viral DNA assay showed that these cells were readily infected with virus present in seminal plasma (fig.V.4). Furthermore, as little as 20 copies of virus were sufficient to infect DCs.

To determine whether DCs were productively infected with virus, p24 protein production by MDDCs infected with HIV-1 in vitro (table V.3) was measured by ELISA. Levels of p24 antigen in culture supernatants from allogeneic MLRs which were set up using HIV-1 infected MDDCs [infected with JRCSF, PE106 and JW5 viruses with or without seminal plasma (table V.2), and infected with virus present in seminal plasma from patient 10 (table V.3)] were also measured by ELISA to investigate whether productive infection occurred within CD4+ T cells to which MDDCs transmitted virus. Antigen presenting function of HIV-1-infected MDDCs was assessed by allogeneic MLRs.
Little or no p24 protein release was detected by HIV-1 infected MDDCs, demonstrating that DCs may not be productively infected or the assay employed was not sensitive enough. Taken together with data from viral DNA assay it suggests that virus may be present in MDDCs in the latent form and consequently not available for infection of CD4$^+$ T cells. Whether DCs are productively infected with HIV is controversial. Several groups have shown that DCs are productively infected as has been demonstrated by electron microscopy showing budding of viral particles (Patterson et al, 1987; Blauvelt et al, 1997) and by detection of p24 protein (Chougnet et al, 1999; Kacani et al, 1998; Blauvelt et al, 1997). Indirect evidence has also been provided by the fact that DCs have been shown to transmit virus to monocytes (Kacani et al, 1998), and to T cells (Frank et al, 1999; Frankel et al, 1998; Ludewig et al, 1996). In contrast, others have detected entry of HIV but little evidence for productive infection in DCs without T cells (Granelli-Piperno et al, 1998; Weissman et al, 1995$^a$; Weissman et al, 1995$^b$; Ayehunie et al, 1995; Ramazzotti et al, 1995; Cameron et al, 1994; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Pope et al, 1994; Cameron et al, 1992). These latter results support our findings presented in this chapter where p24 antigen in MDDC supernatants was undetectable by ELISA. However, the DC-T cell association does provide a site of HIV replication, and the degree of infection appears to be related to the degree of T cell activation (Blauvelt et al, 1997; Cameron et al, 1994; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Tsunetsugu-Yokota et al, 1997). The exact mechanisms involved in the transmission of HIV from DCs to T cells are not fully understood. It has been suggested that CD40-CD40L [CD154] and CD28-CD80 interactions are important in this process (Pinchuk et al, 1994; Caux et al, 1994) suggesting
the importance of T cell activation. It has also been shown that direct contact of HIV-1-infected DCs with T cells through adhesion molecules, is crucial for efficient virus transmission from DCs to T cells and subsequent virus production (Tsunetsugu-Yokota et al, 1997). Whether MDDCs transmitted the virus to T cells was not determined by viral DNA PCR in this study. Supernatants from allogeneic MLR did not contain detectable levels of p24 antigens. There are several possible explanations as to why we were unable to detect p24 antigen released in DC supernatants or in allogeneic MLR supernatants in this study and they include:

i) The p24 protein ELISA used in this study may not be sensitive enough to detect p24 protein released. The detection limit of our assay ranged between 0.0316ng/ml and 1ng/ml. Others have shown that p24 production by DCs infected with HIV-1 without T cells or those co-cultured with T cells could be as little as 0.01ng/ml (Kacani et al, 1998; Blauvelt et al, 1997).

ii) The culture conditions/periods of cultivation employed in this study may not be optimum. Productive infection of DCs depends on the culture conditions as has been shown by the fact that when DCs were infected and cultivated without cytokine supplementation p24 antigen production was rarely observed whereas when cultivated in the presence of GM-CSF and IL-4 large amounts of p24 protein were produced after 7 days of cultivation (Kacani et al, 1998; Blauvelt et al, 1997). We have supplemented the cultures with GM-CSF and IL-4 every other day and have cultivated the cells for up to 5 or 6 days after incubation with virus overnight. Detectable levels of p24 were obtained
towards end of cultivation period [after 5 or 6 days of cultivation (table V.1)]. Therefore, cultivation time may not have been long enough to release larger amount of p24 and the system may have required a longer cultivation time.

iii) 1ng/ml (p24 protein concentration) of virus may not be sufficient to infect 10^6 DCs/ml productively. We did not evaluate the infectious dose [50% tissue culture infective dose (TCID_{50})] of virus used to infect DCs. It is difficult to assess TCID_{50} of JRCSF virus since TCID_{50} are evaluated based on syncytium formation. JRCSF virus is R5 strain of virus and does not cause formation of syncitia (Dr. P. Hayes, personal communication). Thus it is difficult to conclude that the amount of virus used in this study was sufficient for detectable level of p24 proteins to be produced.

MDDCs which were infected with virus showed increased allostimulatory capacity. MDDCs infected with JRCSF virus or PE106 virus displayed higher allostimulatory capacity than MDDCs infected with JW5 (fig.V.5) and this observation was associated with levels of infection with the virus as demonstrated by PCR (fig.V.3). The suppressive effect of seminal plasma on MDDC function (chapter IV) was largely overcome if virus was present in the culture (fig.V.6-fig.V.8) although there was a decrease when MDDCs were exposed to 1% seminal plasma from HIV^+ patients (fig.V.9), compared with control MDDCs which were not exposed to seminal plasma. It has been shown that HIV-1 infected DCs may have increased pro-inflammatory activity as has been demonstrated by elevated production of TNF-α and IL-1β (Lore et al,
1999) as a result of activation of NF-κB (Kobayash et al, 1989; Okamoto et al, 1989). Therefore, it is possible that MDDCs infected with HIV in our study, may have produced TNF-α which abrogated the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on the allostimulatory function of MDDCs which was demonstrated in chapter IV. This Taken together, HIV exposure clearly overcame the suppressive effect of seminal plasma. However, productive infection of T cells was not demonstrated by p24 release, despite demonstration of virus entry and reverse transcription of viral RNA to DNA by PCR.

**Future work**

All the further work listed below could be performed with five populations of DCs described below:

i) DCs infected with HIV-1 alone.

ii) DCs infected with HIV-1 in the presence of TNF-α.

iii) DCs infected with HIV-1 in the presence of seminal plasma from HIV-1 negative individuals.

iv) DCs infected with HIV-1 in the presence of seminal plasma from HIV-1 negative individuals plus TNF-α.

v) DCs infected with virus present in seminal plasma from HIV+ individuals.

1. **Do DCs become productively infected with HIV-1?**

Whether DCs are productively infected with virus should be measured using a more sensitive ELISA system (i.e. commercially available ELISA kits) for p24
antigen. Cultivation time with virus could be extended to allow release of more p24 proteins.

2. Can infected DCs activate T cells?
It has been shown that the degree of T cell infection parallels the degree of T cell activation (Cameron et al, 1994; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Tsunetsugu-yokota et al, 1997; Blauvelt et al, 1997). It has been suggested that infection with HIV results in a defect in antigen presenting function of DCs (Knight et al, 1993; Macatonia et al, 1989). Our data from allogeneic MLRs using HIV-infected MDDCs demonstrated that HIV infection of MDDCs did not result in a suppressed allostimulatory function. This could be confirmed by performing the following experiments: DCs could be co-cultured with CD4+ T cells [both autologous and allogeneic] or recall antigen stimulated autologous CD4+ T cells. The function of DCs could then be assessed by [3H]-tymidine uptake.

3. Can infected DCs transmit virus to CD4+ T cells?
After pulsing of DCs with virus, DCs could be co-cultured with autologous CD4+ T cells for a longer period (up to 14 days). p24 antigen levels could be measured in culture supernatants collected at different time points and viral DNA could be assessed in cells which are harvested at different time points. To do this experiment sorting of the cells (CD3+ cell sorting to eliminate DCs) prior to viral DNA assay would be required to differentiate infection of DCs from infection of T cells. This would allow investigation of whether DCs transmit virus to CD4+ cell and also to monitor productive infection of these cells.
4. **Quantitation of viral DNA in DCs.**

Whether seminal plasma induces preferential infection with certain types of virus [R5, X4 or R5/X4 strains] could be determined by quantitating viral DNA copies of each virus in DCs after *in vitro* infection. Virus DNA could be quantitated using a LightCycler™ (Roche, Lewes, East Sussex, U.K.) which allows measurement of copy numbers.

5. **Does viral load in semen have an influence on the suppressive effect of seminal plasma?**

Our preliminary data showed that the viral load in seminal plasma appears to be correlated with a reduced suppressive effect of seminal plasma on the allostimulatory capacity of DCs. To confirm this phenomenon, the same experiment could be performed using larger numbers of HIV⁺ seminal plasma samples with wide ranges of viral load. Also, *in vitro*-infection studies with different viral concentrations can be performed.

There are other factors which may have effect on the allostimulatory function of DCs. They include levels of TNF-α production which is probably elevated upon infection with HIV. The results from the study using HIV⁺ seminal plasma did not correlate with the *in vitro*-studies and this may be due to different levels of and types of cytokines present in HIV⁺ seminal plasma from HIV-negative seminal plasma and consequently results in a different outcome.
Since the development of a vaccine to prevent sexual transmission of HIV which is the most frequent mode of transmission, is the ultimate goal, the mechanisms of sexual transmission of HIV must be understood. Several different approaches have been used to elucidate mechanisms of sexual transmission of HIV such as SIV-macaque model (Hu et al, 2000; Miller and Hu, 1999; Joag et al, 1997; Blauvelt et al, 1997; Spira et al, 1996; Zambruno et al, 1995), skin explants (Blauvelt et al, 2000; Reece et al, 1998), and mucosa biopsies (Greenhead et al, 2000; Collins et al, 2000; Hu et al, 2000). Studies using mucosal tissues include the use of gastrointestinal biopsies (Olsson et al, 2000; Poles et al, 2000), rectosigmoidal biopsies (Olsson et al, 2000; Poles et al, 2000) and female reproductive tract biopsies (Collins et al, 2000; Greenhead et al, 2000). However, the histologic anatomy of these different mucosal tissues is very diverse. The nature and localisation of APCs which are suggested to be the first targets of HIV infection or association and overall structural cellular organisation differ in these tissues. Therefore, the most appropriate model to investigate the mechanisms of heterosexual transmission of HIV would be use of female genital tract tissues. **Ex vivo** studies together with **in vitro** studies described in this chapter would allow better understanding of the mechanisms of heterosexual transmission of HIV.
VI

DISCUSSION:

ROLE OF SEMINAL FLUID IN SEXUAL TRANSMISSION OF HIV-1

HIV-1 is transmitted vertically from mother to child, by sexual contact or by contact with infected blood. Sexual transmission is responsible for more than 90% of HIV-1 infections in Africa and in developing countries. The UNAIDS figures estimate that 5.3 million people were newly infected with HIV with 3 million deaths from AIDS occurred during the year 2000. This thesis focuses on factors influencing HIV-1 transmission via sexual contact. Semen is the vehicle for the virus during the sexual transmission of HIV from a male. Mucosal DCs are considered to play an important role in establishing infection and mediating the systemic spread of HIV due to their following characteristics: i) location within the mucosal epithelium, ii) expression of CD4 and CCR5 (Zhang et al, 1998; Zoeteweij et al, 1998; Zaitseva et al, 1997; Granelli-Piperno et al, 1996), iii) the ability to migrate to T cell-rich areas of lymph nodes (Hu et al, 2000; Banchereau et al, 1998) and iv) the ability to induce clustering, activation and transmission of HIV to T cells (Zoeteweij et al, 1998; Blauvelt et al, 1997). Therefore, this thesis examined, in particular, the main reservoir of HIV-1 in semen and the effect of seminal plasma on DC function, phenotype and susceptibility to HIV-1 infection.
VI.1. Summary of Thesis

The HIV-1 reservoir in semen was defined in order to evaluate ‘sperm-washing’ as a method of reducing the risk of HIV-1 transmission in HIV-discordant couples who wish to have children (chapter III). There is still controversy surrounding whether spermatozoa express CD4 and are infected or infectable with HIV-1. The study described in chapter III demonstrated that spermatozoa are not infected with HIV-1 in vivo as was demonstrated by the fact that neither viral RNA nor DNA was detected in these cells (Kim et al, 1999). The lack of potential for these cells to become infected was confirmed by phenotypic analysis of sperm cells. Spermatozoa did not express CD4 or CCR5 on the cell surface. Although there was a low level of CXCR4 expressed on spermatozoa, these cells lacked CD4 expression both at the protein and mRNA levels, suggesting that spermatozoa are not likely to be infectable with HIV.

Galactosylceramide (or a derivative) which has shown to be an essential component of the neural receptor for HIV-1 (Bath et al, 1991; Harouse et al, 1991), has been shown to be present on the surface membrane of the mid-piece and equatorial segments of human spermatozoa (Baccetti et al, 1994; Brogi et al, 1995). Although there is one report showing that sperm glycolipids are capable of binding to gp120 (Brogi et al, 1995), whether these glycolipids function as an alternative receptor for HIV infection of spermatozoa has not yet been confirmed. Since the mid-piece of sperm contains mitochondria that
generate energy for motility of sperm, it is possible that, if glycolipids on the
surface of the mid-piece of sperm function as an alternative receptor for HIV,
HIV infection may result in disrupted mitochondrial function and sperm immotility. This may explain an observation of Scofield et al in 1994 that HIV
was detected in immotile but not in motile spermatozoa. ‘Sperm-washing’
involves isolation of motile sperm cells by a ‘swim-up’ procedure which
would reduce or possibly even eliminate contamination with ‘infected’ non-
motile sperm cells if these exist. Therefore, even with the assumption that
sperm cells may be infected with HIV via glycolipids on the cell surface which
may impair the motility of sperm cells, ‘sperm washing’ would still reduce the
risk of transmission in HIV-discordant couples. It should be noted that in this
study, virus was not detected in the less motile or dead sperm cell fraction.
Recently, it has been shown that hepatitis C virus transmission can be reduced
or eliminated by the ‘sperm-washing’ procedure (Pasquier et al, 2000).
However, it has been suggested that hepatitis C virus is a blood-born infection
and is not transmitted sexually (Dr. J. Gilmour, personal communication).
Technical differences in HIV-1 detection and sperm preparation methods, or
contamination of spermatozoal preparations with NSCs, may have resulted in
discrepancies in results obtained by different groups.

HIV-1 was present in semen both as free-virus and NSC-associated virus (Kim
et al, 1999) and these data have been supported by others (Pasquier et al, 2000;
Coombs et al, 1998; Gupta et al, 1997; Dyer et al, 1996; Vernazza et al, 1996;
Liuzzi et al, 1996; Rasheed et al, 1995). The present study also provided
indirect evidence that semen may be a distinct reservoir of HIV-1 as was
demonstrated by the finding that levels of HIV-1 viraemia in semen did not
always correspond with that in blood plasma or with blood CD4 counts. Other
groups have reported similar findings (Coombs et al, 1998; Gupta et al, 1997;
Liuzzi et al, 1996; Rasheed et al, 1995).

NSCs consist of immature germ cells, epithelial cells and leukocytes including
macrophages, CD3^CD4^ and CD3^CD8^ T lymphocytes and CD103^ T cells
(Quayle et al, 1997). It has been shown that among NSCs, T lymphocytes and
macrophages are infected with HIV-1 in vivo (Quayle et al, 1997). The study
described in chapter III showed that up to 45% of the NSC population express
CD4, suggesting that these cells may be susceptible to HIV-1 infection. The
mechanisms for preferential transmission of R5 strains and the initial events in
infection after mucosal exposure to virus are not yet well understood. Mucosal
integrity obviously plays an important role in sexual transmission of diseases.
Due to their anatomical location, the vagina and ectocervix are the female
genital tissues facing the potentially highest exposure to pathogens. These
tissues are covered by layers of epithelial cells and antimicrobial secretions
which provide a protective barrier. T cells (both CD4^ T cells and CD8^ T
cells), B cells, Langerhans' cells and plasma cells are present in the female
genital mucosa, located predominantly in the epithelium, parabasal and basal
layers of the vagina and ectocervix (Johansson et al, 1999; Pope et al, 1998;
Morris et al, 1983). It has been suggested that mucosal DCs may be the first
cells to become infected following exposure to HIV (Miller and Hu, 1999;
Spira et al, 1996; Joag et al, 1997; Reece et al, 1998). Freshly isolated LCs (from skin) express functional CCR5 but not CXCR4 (Zaitseva et al, 1997) suggesting that selection of R5 strains could take place in the mucosa. Conversely, it has been shown that DCs isolated from human cervicovagina mucosa express CXCR4 but not CCR5 (Hladik et al, 1999). T cells derived from the human cervicovagina, form stable conjugates with DCs in vitro and result in productive infection by viruses of both co-receptor specificities (Hladik et al, 1999), suggesting that selection of virus variants does not occur by differential expression of co-receptors on genital cells. It has also been suggested that T cells in the endocervix may be the first cells to become infected (Zhang et al, 1999). Infection of T cells in the macaque endocervix with SIV was detected 3 days post inoculation. However, the possible infection of endocervical DCs or macrophages with SIV at day 3 was not assessed and therefore, it can not be concluded that T cells rather than DCs are the first cells to become infected. SIV infection was not detected in any cell type studied (i.e. T cells, CD4+ cells, macrophages and DCs) 1 day after inoculation, but by day 7 infection of endocervical DCs and macrophages, in addition to T cells was detected (Zhang et al, 1999). Genotypic and phenotypic analyses of viral isolates from blood and semen (Zhu et al, 1996; Kroodsma et al, 1994) provided evidence that the semen may be a reservoir for R5 strains of virus thus allowing preferential transmission of R5 strains. The present study supports this hypothesis. It has been demonstrated that NSCs express CCR5, but negligible amounts of CXCR4, suggesting that this may contribute to the selection of R5 strains of virus within semen (chapter III). However whether
such low levels of CXCR4 expression on NSCs is sufficient to allow entry of X4 strains remains to be determined. Therefore, it is possible that R5 strain selection may take place in semen as well as in LCs at the mucosal surface.

In chapter IV the effects of seminal plasma on the phenotype and function of DCs were investigated. Immature DCs derived from peripheral blood CD14⁺ monocytes using GM-CSF and IL-4 were generated as previously described (Sallustio et al, 1995; Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1994). Seminal plasma had suppressive effects on the allostimulatory capacity of DCs and reduced expression of co-stimulatory molecules on these cells (chapter IV). Whether such suppressive effects on allostimulatory capacity were the result of prostaglandin activity was investigated, since PGE2 has been shown to have immunomodulatory effects and is also known to be present in human semen at a concentration 10⁴ times that seen in peripheral blood (Kelly, 1997). PGE2 has both pro-inflammatory (Rieser et al, 1998; Reiser et al, 1997; Portanova et al, 1996; Kalinski et al, 1998) and suppressive effects (Strassman et al, 1994) on APCs. PGE2 inhibits IL-12 production in DCs (Kelly et al, 1997; Kraan et al, 1995; Van Parijs et al, 1997) resulting in induction of type-2 polarised effector DCs (Kalinski et al, 1998; Kalinski et al, 1997) which induce Th-2 type responses (Kalinski et al, 1998). PGE2 has also been shown to stimulate IL-10 production in DCs (Groux et al, 1996; Kelly et al, 1997) resulting in tolerogenic DCs, also known as type-3 polarised effector DCs (Steinbrink et al, 1997). These tolerogenic DCs express low levels of co-stimulatory molecules (Kalinski et al, 1998; Steinbrink et al, 1997) and hence may induce
anergy. The present data did not demonstrate a suppressive effect of prostaglandins on DC function. However, this study demonstrated that the suppressive effect induced by seminal plasma was abrogated by removal of lipids (chapter IV), suggesting that glycolipids in seminal plasma do have suppressive effects on DC function. It is possible that other components of seminal plasma may also play a role in induction of the suppressive effects, such as prostatosome, polyamine, TGF-β and IL-10 although IL-10 is present in semen at very low concentrations (Kelly, 1995; Alexander and Ansderson, 1985). Although prostaglandin by itself did not induce suppressive effects in vitro, it is possible that prostaglandins may have DC suppressive effects in combination with other seminal components. It is also possible that spermine oxidation products resulting from an interaction with bovine serum may have resulted in the suppressed allogeneic MLRs as was seen in the murine MLRs (Labib and Tomasi, 1981). A further study using spermine oxidase inhibitors or pulsing DCs with seminal plasma in the absence of bovine serum in the DC medium would determine whether spermine oxidation products are responsible for the suppressed allogeneic T cell proliferation described in chapter IV. The possibility that the suppressive effect of seminal plasma might be due to induction of T cell anergy was investigated, but no such phenomenon was demonstrated (chapter IV).

The suppressive effect of seminal plasma on the allostimulatory function of DCs was overcome by addition of TNF-α (chapter IV). The decrease in expression of co-stimulatory molecules on DCs exposed to seminal plasma
was no longer observed when DCs were exposed to both TNF-α and to seminal plasma in combination. Previously published data have demonstrated that pro-inflammatory cytokines induce maturation of DCs (Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1997; Jonuleit et al, 1997; Cella et al, 1997; Roake et al, 1995; Sallusto et al, 1995). HIV was shown to infect DCs in vitro and this infection also abrogated the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on DCs (chapter V). This may result from maturation of DCs on antigen-uptake and/or increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines (e.g. TNF-α and IL-1β) by HIV-1 infected DCs (Lore et al, 1999).

The expression of HIV-1 co-receptors on DCs was influenced by seminal plasma, by TNF-α and by both in combination (chapter V). TNF-α alone, seminal plasma alone or in combination induced a decrease in CCR5 expression and an increase in CXCR4 (chapter V) which may favour infection by X4 strains of HIV-1. These data were supported by those of others (Canque et al, 1999; Sallusto et al, 1998; Zaitseva et al, 1997). Expression of CXCR4 is also up-regulated by type-2 cytokines such as IL-4 and down-regulated by type-1 cytokines such as IFN-γ (Zoeteweij et al, 1998). Therefore, an increase in type 2 cytokine production, which can occur during HIV infection (Stylianou et al, 1999; Meroni et al, 1996) and elevated levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-α, IL-8 and IL-6, which can also occur in STDs, (Ramsey et al, 1995) may promote infection of DCs with X4 strains. The infection of seminal plasma-pulsed DCs, but not of control DCs, with an X4 strain of virus was observed (chapter V). Increased expression of CXCR4
on seminal plasma-pulsed DCs may result from TGF-β present in semen. TGF-β has been shown to up-regulate CXCR4 expression on DCs (Zoeteweji et al, 1998).

There are limitations in our study. CD14⁺ monocyte-derived DCs were used as a mucosal LC model which has been found recently to be not an ideal model in terms of phenotype (fig.1.6). LCs derived from CD14⁻CD1a⁺ LC precursors, LCs isolated from female mucosa, or mucosal biopsy obtained from the female genital tract would be a better model. A summary of the thesis is outlined in fig.VI.1. It also describes proposed mechanisms which may be important in the suppressive effects of seminal plasma on DCs which would provide 'protection' to the 'male cells' in a 'female environment', and mechanisms where 'danger' which would be apparent if a pathogen was present, may be tackled by functioning DCs.

VI.2. SIGNIFICANCE OF THE IN VITRO FINDINGS TO THE IN VIVO SITUATION

VI.2.1. The effect of seminal plasma and TNF-α on DC function in the female reproductive tract

The function of the DC in mucosal tissues, including the female reproductive tract, is to take up and process antigen of potential pathogens and present peptides of the antigen in association with MHC molecules. The presented antigen may then be recognised by both naive and memory T cells, resulting in
T cell activation via co-stimulatory molecules expressed on the DC surface (including CD40, CD80 and CD86) and ultimately leading to the generation of an immune response to the pathogen. This sequence of events involves both maturation and migration of the DC from that of an antigen uptake phenotype at the mucosal epithelium to that of an immunostimulatory phenotype in the local lymph node, where the vastly higher T cell density facilitates interaction of the DC with the T cell.

The mucosa of female reproductive tract, like other mucosa, encounters many potential infectious agents and consequently an effective barrier must be presented. The vagina and ectocervix, which are potentially the tissues facing the greatest exposure to pathogens, including HIV-1 in semen, are covered with layers of epithelial cells (fig.1.4) and antimicrobial secretions such as lactoferrin, lysozyme and transmembrane mucins (e.g. Mucin 1 or episialin) and secretory mucins (DeSouza et al, 1999; Gendler and Spicer, 1995). Such anatomy provides a primary protective barrier. Although potential pathogens must be eliminated, the main function of the female reproductive tract is to facilitate insemination, fertilisation and development of the embryo. To the female, cells in semen are allogeneic, however to promote fertilisation of the embryo an immune response to spermatozoa should be avoided. The results of this and other studies demonstrate some of the mechanisms that humans have evolved to both promote fertilisation by minimising immune responses to seminal components but also discriminate and respond to potential pathogens if present within the semen. The significance of the present findings on these
two opposing functions (fertilisation versus response to pathogens) can best be explained by describing the possible in vivo situations. In this study, TNF-α was employed as an inflammatory stimulus, which would be one inflammatory component present in semen when a male is infected with a pathogen (STDs) in vivo.

i) Exposure of the female reproductive tract to semen in the absence of inflammation

Exposure of MDDCs to seminal plasma would mimic the in vivo situation where the female reproductive tract would be exposed to semen in the absence of an inflammatory stimulus or STD. In this situation mucosal epithelial DC (i.e. LC) function would be suppressed by seminal plasma as demonstrated by decreased expression of co-stimulatory molecules, along with a decreased ability to stimulate T cells. Therefore, an immune response to spermatozoa would be discouraged, promoting fertilisation. This inhibition of an immune response to semen may be more important in the long term, with the female potentially exposed frequently to semen over her entire reproductive life-span and beyond. Seminal plasma appears to discourage an immune response by affecting DC rather than T cell function directly as seminal plasma pulsed MDDCs did not appear to induce anergy in T cells. T cells were not exposed directly to seminal plasma as the accepted model of DC function is that DC-T cell interaction occurs in the lymph node away from contact with seminal plasma. T cells exposed to seminal plasma pulsed MDDCs proliferated in response to IL-2 and to freshly added seminal plasma unpulsed MDDCs. The
present study demonstrated that lipids might be the major suppressive component of seminal plasma. However, individual lipid molecules may activate DC function demonstrating that the suppressive effects are induced by a complex interaction between seminal components.

ii) **Exposure of the female reproductive tract to an inflammatory stimulus (without semen)**

Exposure of MDDCs to TNF-α alone would mimic the *in vivo* situation where the female reproductive tract would be exposed to an inflammatory stimulus or STD in the absence of semen. This situation may occur either as a result of a non-sexually transmitted vaginal infection (e.g. thrush) or due to a STD that may establish itself at a time point subsequent to insemination. The results of the present study demonstrated that under these conditions mucosal DC function would be induced, with maximal increases in expression of co-stimulatory molecules and T cell stimulatory abilities. Such factors would promote an immune response to the pathogen.

iii) **Exposure of the female reproductive tract to semen in the presence of inflammation**

Exposure of MDDCs to seminal plasma and TNF-α would mimic the *in vivo* situation where the female reproductive tract would be exposed to semen in the presence of an inflammatory stimulus or STD. Some suppressive effect of seminal plasma was evident in this study as the increases in expression of CD86 and allostimulatory abilities were not as great as in MDDCs exposed to
TNF-α alone. However, the present data would suggest that in this circumstance mucosal DC function would be retained, with increased ability to stimulate T cells, compared with unexposed mucosal DCs. Therefore, an immune response to a possible pathogen would be promoted.

VI.2.2. The relationship between DCs in the female reproductive tract and HIV-1

The interaction between seminal plasma, TNFα, DCs and HIV-1 was investigated in order to elucidate factors that may influence sexual transmission of HIV-1 to the female with the focus being the potential for the DC to be infected with HIV-1.

i) Influence of seminal plasma and TNF-α on CCR5 and CXCR4 expression by MDDCs

HIV co-receptor expression was assessed as described in chapter IV Exposure of MDDCs to seminal plasma, TNF-α or both together resulted in decreased expression of CCR5 but increased expression of CXCR4. Therefore, if DCs are infected with HIV-1, exposure to seminal plasma and/or TNF-α may promote infection with X4 rather than R5 strains. However, CCR5 and CXCR4 expression would have evolved not to allow infection with HIV-1, but rather to mediate cellular responses to the chemokines RANTES, MIP-1α, MIP-1β and SDF-1. One of the main functional attributes of a DC is that of migration from the mucosal tissue to the lymph node, with chemokines
controlling this process. Therefore, decreased CCR5 but increased CXCR4 expression may represent a migratory DC phenotype, reducing the ability to respond to RANTES, MIP-1α and MIP-1β produced in the mucosal tissue, especially in inflammation, but increasing the ability to migrate towards SDF-1 present in the lymph node at higher concentrations (Delgado et al, 1998; Sallusto et al, 1998).

The finding that either seminal plasma or TNF-α alone induced a migratory phenotype in the DC is in contrast to the effect of these two agents on DC co-stimulatory abilities, with seminal plasma suppressing and TNF-α enhancing such activities. Therefore, exposure of DCs to seminal plasma components promotes maturation of DCs in terms of migratory abilities but without increased T cell stimulatory abilities.

ii) HIV-1 infection of DCs and the influence of seminal plasma

The present study assessed the susceptibility of MDDCs to infection with R5 (JRCSF), X4 (JW5) and dual tropic (PE106) strains of HIV-1. In addition the effect of seminal plasma on MDDC susceptibility to infection was assessed, thereby mimicking the in vivo-situation were the mucosal epithelium of the female reproductive tract would be exposed to HIV-1 in the presence of seminal plasma.

Detection of viral DNA in HIV-1 exposed MDDCs demonstrated infection of these cells with all three strains of virus. However, no evidence of productive
infection could be demonstrated by release of p24 protein into MDDC culture supernatants. Together, these findings suggest that HIV-1 viral particles may attach to DCs via CD4 and either CCR5 or CXCR4 co-receptors and fuse with the cellular membrane. Viral RNA is then reverse transcribed into viral DNA, which was detected by PCR. Whether viral DNA may then integrate into the DC genome, forming stable proviral DNA, was not assessed. The lack of productive infection and evidence from other studies would argue against this (Granelli-Piperno et al, 1998; Weissman et al, 1995; Weissman et al, 1995; Ayehunie et al, 1995; Ramazzotti et al, 1995; Cameron et al, 1994; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Pope et al, 1994; Cameron et al, 1992). Studies of HIV-1 replication in T cells have demonstrated that an activated host cell is required for productive infection (Blauvelt et al, 1997; Cameron et al, 1994; Pinchuk et al, 1994; Tsunetsugu-Yokota et al, 1995). HIV-1 may enter resting T cells, with reverse transcription of viral RNA, however, in resting T cells viral DNA remains in an unstable unintegrated form without productive infection. Stable integration of proviral DNA in to the T cell chromosome requires T cell activation. However, integration of proviral HIV DNA does occur in terminally differentiated macrophages (Wienberg et al, 1991; Lewis et al, 1992) and therefore, HIV-1 may well integrate into terminally differentiated DCs.

Seminal plasma exposure resulted in prominent alterations in the susceptibility of MDDCs to the three different strains of HIV-1, as demonstrated by PCR, which appeared to reflect the seminal plasma induced alterations in co-receptor
expression by MDDCs. The absence of seminal plasma favoured infection of MDDCs with the R5 strain JRCSF, with these cells displaying a CCR5\textsuperscript{high} / CXCR4\textsuperscript{low} phenotype. Seminal plasma pulsed MDDCs were susceptible to the X4 strain JW5, with these cells displaying a CCR5\textsuperscript{low} / CXCR4\textsuperscript{high} phenotype. Both unpulsed and seminal plasma-pulsed MDDCs were susceptible to infection with the dual tropic strain PE106.

Therefore, seminal plasma favoured infection of DCs with X4 strains of HIV-1 apparently due to increased expression of CXCR4 and decreased expression of CCR5. In addition, seminal plasma exposure may also affect the function of these co-receptors on the DC as well as their level of expression, however this was not assessed in the present study. Semen would be present at the point of insemination and therefore, the results of this study suggest that infection of DCs in the epithelium of the female reproductive tract with X4 strains of HIV-1 would be favoured if this strain of virus is present in semen. This is contrary to the compelling epidemiological evidence the R5 strain is the predominant HIV strain transmitted. This evidence would argue against direct infection of the DC, with viral fusion and reverse transcription of RNA, being the key event in transmission of HIV-1. However it is possible that semen may be a reservoir for R5 strains of virus due to the high level of CCR5 expression (but only low levels of CXCR4 expression) on NSCs (Kim \textit{et al}, 1999) with the R5 strains predominating in semen (Zhu \textit{et al}, 1996; Kroodsma \textit{et al}, 1994).
HIV-1 exposed MDDCs displayed increased T cell stimulatory abilities as shown by their increased allostimulatory capacities. As was the case for TNF-α, HIV-1 infection overcame the suppressive effects of seminal plasma, with MDDCs exposed to both virus and seminal plasma displaying greater T cell stimulatory capacity than untreated MDDCs. This increased T cell stimulatory ability was greatest with each viral strain with the corresponding seminal plasma concentration favouring DC infection.

VI.3. THE ROLE OF MUCOSAL EPITHELIAL DCs IN SEXUAL TRANSMISSION OF HIV

Using the MDDC as a model for immature DCs, the present study investigated the possible interactions between mucosal DCs in the female reproductive tract, seminal plasma, inflammatory stimuli and HIV-1. The ultimate aim was to elucidate the possible mechanisms of and factors influencing sexual transmission of HIV-1. In relation to HIV transmission the present study has demonstrated that:

ii) Seminal plasma favoured infection of DCs with X4 strains of HIV-1.

iii) Seminal plasma had suppressive effects on DC co-stimulatory cell surface phenotype and T cell stimulatory ability.

iv) This suppressive effect was overcome either by exposure to an inflammatory stimulus (TNF-α) or to HIV-1 itself.
v) Seminal plasma or TNF-α induced a CCR5\textsuperscript{low}/CXCR4\textsuperscript{high} migratory phenotype.

The direct involvement of the DC being a key event in transmission of HIV-1 remains unproven. However, data from this and other studies demonstrates that the biology of the DCs may result in this cell playing a crucial role in HIV-1 transmission. Using the data of this study as the focus, but with data from other studies included, the following sequence of events and a possible role of epithelial mucosal DCs in HIV-1 transmission to the female is proposed:

Step 1) \textbf{Sexual exposure of the female to semen from a HIV\textsuperscript{+} man.}

DCs in the mucosal epithelium may be exposed to both seminal plasma and to HIV-1, either as free virus in the seminal plasma or as infected NSCs. Epidemiological data suggests that impaired mucosal integrity due to the presence of ulcerative STDs increases the chance of sexual transmission of HIV-1. Such impaired mucosal integrity would increase the exposure of mucosal leukocytes, including the DC, to HIV and semen. STDs also increase numbers and / or activation status of DCs, macrophages and T cells which are susceptible to viral infection.

Step 2) \textbf{Association of HIV-1 with the DC}

HIV-1 may then associate with the DCs \textit{in vivo} in two ways and both may feasibly occur simultaneously. HIV may bind to the DCs via CD4 and either CCR5 or CXCR4 co-receptors, resulting in viral fusion and reverse
transcription of viral RNA but without productive infection. The presence of semen may favour infection of DCs by X4 strains of HIV-1. HIV-1 may also associate with the DC at the cell surface without fusion of the viral particle. A role for the adhesion molecule DC-SIGN in binding HIV at the DC surface has been suggested (Geitenbeek et al, 2000b). There is no evidence that semen affects the strain of HIV that may bind via DC-SIGN and presumably both R5 and X4 strains may bind in this manner, if present. However, other studies have shown that R5 strains predominate in semen (Zhu et al, 1996; Kroodsma et al, 1994) and the present study demonstrates CCR5 rather than CXCR4 expression by NSCs.

Step 3) Dissemination of HIV-1 via the DC

DCs exposed to semen would mature to a CCR5^low / CXCR4^high migratory phenotype and migrate towards the lymph node in response to a concentration gradient of SDF-1. TNF-α may also be present in semen, which may enhance the alteration to a migratory phenotype. The CCR5^low phenotype may assist migration away from RANTES, MIP-1α and MIP-1β, should the mucosal epithelial region be inflamed. Therefore, HIV associated with the DC would be carried from the mucosal tissue to the lymph node where DCs would cluster with T cells, facilitating infection of T cells in the lymph node. It would be expected that virions associated with the DC surface via DC-SIGN would be the HIV particles transferred to the T cell. However, a low and undetectable level of productive HIV infection in DCs could conceivably result in T cell infection.
In the present study DCs exposed to and apparently infected with HIV-1, displayed increased T cell stimulatory abilities, even in the presence of suppressive seminal plasma. Exposure to seminal TNF-α would further enhance DC-T cell stimulatory abilities. Therefore, the DCs in contact with HIV-1 and responsible for HIV transmission to the T cells, would also be the DC with a greater ability to stimulate T cells. This enhanced T cell stimulation would further promote productive viral replication in the DC-T cell cluster with establishment of the infection in the lymph node and ultimate dissemination of HIV.

The mucosal tissue exposed to HIV and semen would contain leukocytes other than DCs that would be targets for more productive HIV replication. However, the marked ability of the DC, rather than other mucosal leukocytes, to migrate from the mucosal epithelium directly to the T cell rich lymph node, followed by DC-mediated T cell activation with productive viral replication, implicates the DC as an important factor in the sexual transmission of HIV-1 and subsequent systemic dissemination.

One of the desirable outcomes of an efficient treatment or vaccine for HIV, in addition to lowering blood plasma viral load, would be a lowering of the viral load in semen as semen serves as the primary vector for sexual transmission of HIV since it contains both cell-associated and cell-free viruses. In order to stop systemic spread of virus infection after genital exposure, a vaccine which can
induce potent immunologic memory cell populations that rapidly expand in response to the presence of HIV recall antigens within the genital tract or draining lymph nodes is desirable. Another important fact to be considered in order to reduce the incidence of sexual transmission of HIV is treatment of other STDs. This can both reduce viral shedding in semen and in vaginal fluid and can restore mucosal integrity, providing a more effective barrier to, and protection from HIV and other STDs.
Fig. IV.1. Proposed mechanisms for the suppressive effect of seminal plasma on DCs and for TNF-α–induced and/or virus-induced abrogation of the suppressive effect

1. Seminal plasma (SPM) suppressed allostimulatory ability of DCs significantly and such the suppressed allostimulatory capacity of DCs correlated with reduced expression of co-stimulatory molecules on these cells. Suppression may be due to induction of tolerogenic DCs (type-3 effector DCs) by activities of immunosuppressive components in semen such as 19-OH-PGE2, TGF-β, IL-10, and prostasome (Kalinski et al, 1998; Steinbrink et al, 1997).

2. Exogenous PGE2 although lipids in seminal plasma play a role in the induction of the suppressive effects on the function of DCs, did not have the same effect on the function of DCs as seminal plasma. Exogenous PGE2 has shown to induce differentiation of immature DCs to type-2 effector DCs resulting in type 2 responses (Kalinski et al, 1998).

3. Recombinant TNF-α induced enhanced allostimulatory ability of DCs. TNF-α induces ceramide release in DCs resulting in inhibition of endocytosis (Sallusto and Lanzavecchia, 1997; Jonuleit et al, 1997) and also induces secretion of pro-inflammatory cytokines by DCs as a result of activation of NF-kB (Kobayashi et al, 1989; Okamoto et al, 1989)

4. When virus was present in culture the suppressive effect of seminal plasma was abrogated. Infection with HIV induces release of TNF-α which may induce migration of other immune cells to the site of inflammation in vivo and may also induce further maturation of DCs themselves.

5. TNF-α blocked the suppressive effect of seminal plasma and vice versa. TNF-a may overcome the suppressive effect of seminal plasma by inducing maturation of DCs as described in 3, however seminal plasma also counteracts with the effect of TNF-a. Thus, this counterbalancing may have resulted in unchanged phenotype and function of DCs.

(imDC: immature DC; mDC: mature DC; →: induction; ↔: interaction; →: secretion; ↑: increase; ↓: decrease; ▼: no change)
BIBLIOGRAPHY


Canque B, Bakri Y, Camus S, Yagello M, Benjouad A and Gluckman JC. The susceptibility to X4 and R5 human immunodeficiency virus-1 strains of dendritic cells derived in vitro from CD34+ hematopoietic progenitor cells is primarily determined by their maturation stage. *Blood* (1999) **93**: 3866-3875


Chang CH, Furue M, and Tamaki K. B7-1 expression of Langerhans cells is up-regulated by proinflammatory cytokines, and is down-regulated by


Crawford S and Goff SP. A deletion mutation in the 5' part of the pol gene of moloney murine leukemia virus blocks proteolytic processing of the gag and pol polyproteins. *J Virol.* (1985) **53:** 899-907

Cumberbatch M and Kimber. Phenotypic characteristics of antigen-bearing cells in the draining lymph nodes of contact sensitized mice. *Immunology* (1990) **71(3):** 404-410

Cyster JG. Chemokines and homing of dendritic cells to the T cell area of lymphoid organs. *J. Exp. Med.* (1999) **189:** 447-450

Dalgleish AG, Beverly PCL, Clapham PR, Crawford DH, Greaves MF, Weiss RA. The CD4 (T4) antigen is an essential component of the receptor for the AIDS retrovirus. *Nature* (1984) **312:** 763-768

Dean M, Genetic restriction of HIV-1 infection and progression to AIDS by a detection allele of the CKR5 structural gene. *Science* (1996) **273:** 1856-1862

Delgado E, Finkel V, Baggiolini M, Mackay CR, Steinman RM and Granelli-Piperno A. Mature dendritic cells respond to SDF-1, but not to several beta-chemokines. *Immunobiology.* (1998) **198:** 490-500


Deng HK, Unutmaz D, Kewalramani VN and Litman DR. Expression cloning of new receptors used by simian and human immunodeficiency viruses. *Nature* (1997) **388:** 296-300


Granelli-Piperno A, Delgado E, Finkel V, Paxton W and Steinman RM. Immature dendritic cells selectively replicate macrophagotropic (M-tropic) human immunodeficiency virus type 1, while mature cells efficiently transmit both M- and T-tropic virus to T cells. *J. Virol.* (1998) **72**: 2733-2737


Harding CV and Song R. Phagocytic processing of exogenous particulate antigens by macrophages for presentation by class I MHC molecules. *J. Immunol.* (1994) **153**: 4925-4933


189


Kalinski P, Schuitemaker JHN, Hilkens, CMU and Kapsenberg, ML. Prostaglandin E2 induces the final maturation of IL-12-deficient CD1a^CD83^ dendritic cells: The levels of IL-12 are determined during the final dendritic cell maturation and are resistant to further modulation. *J. Immunol.* (1998) 161: 2804-2809


Levy JA. The transmission of HIV and factors influencing progression to AIDS. *JAMA* (1993) **95**: 86-97


Macatonia SE, Hsieh CS, Murphy KM, and O'Garra A. Dendritic cells and macrophages are required for Th1 development of CD4+ T cells from alpha beta TCR transgenic mice: IL-12 substitution for macrophages to stimulate IFN-gamma production is IFN-gamma-dependent. *Int. Immunol.* (1993) 5(9): 1119-1128


Miller CJ and Hu J. T-cell tropic simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) and simian-human immunodeficiency viruses are readily transmitted by vaginal inoculation of rhesus macaques, and Langerhans' cells of the female genital tract are infected with SIV. *J. Infect. Dis.* (1999) 179(supp. 3): S413-437


Miyazaki M. Epidemiological characteristics of human immunodeficiency virus type-2 infection in Africa. *Int J STD AIDS.* (1995) 6(2): 75-80


Mummidi S, Ahuja SS, McDaniel BL and Ahuja SK. The human CC chemokine receptor 5 (CCR5) gene. Multiple transcripts with 5'-end heterogeneity, dual promoter usage, and evidence for polymorphism within the regulatory regions and noncoding exons. *J. Biol. Chem.* (1997) 272: 3066-3071


Olsson J, Poles M, Spetz AL, Elliott J, Hultin L, Giorgi J, Andersson J, Anton P. Human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection is associated with significant mucosal inflammation characterized by increased expression of CCR5, CXCR4, and beta-chemokines. *J Infect Dis* (2000) **182(6)**: 1625-1635


Plummer F. Heterosexual transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1): interactions of conventional sexually transmitted diseases,


Prickett TC and Hart DN. Anti-leucocyte common (CD45) antibodies inhibit dendritic cell stimulation of CD4 and CD8 T-lymphocyte proliferation. *Immunology* (1990) **69**(2): 250-256


Sallusto F and Lanzavecchia A. Efficient presentation of soluble antigen by cultured human dendritic cells is maintained by granulocyte/macrophage colony stimulating factor plus interleukin 4 and down-regulated by tumour necrosis factor alpha. *J. Exp. Med.* (1994) **179**:1109-1118


Spira AI, Marx PA, Patterson BK, Mahoney J, Koup RA, Wolinsky SM and Ho DD. Cellular targets of infection and route of viral dissemination after an intravaginal inoculation of simian immunodeficiency virus into rhesus macaques. *J. Exp. Med.* (1996) **183**: 215-225


Stevenson M, Stanwick TL, Dempsey MP and Lamonica CA. HIV-1 replication is controlled at the level of T cell activation and proviral integration. *EMBO J* (1990) 9:1551-1560


Weissman D, Li Y, Orenstein JM and Fauci AS. Both a precursors and a mature population of dendritic cells can bind HIV. However, only the mature population that express CD80 can pass infection to unstimulated CD4+ T cells. J. Immunol. (1995) 155: 4111-4117


Yanagihara S, Komura E, Nagafune J, Watarai H and Yamaguchi Y. EBI1/CCR7 is a new member of dendritic cell chemokine receptor that is up-regulated upon maturation. *J. Immunol.* (1998) **161**: 3096-3102


Reproduced with permission of copyright owner. Further reproduction prohibited without permission.